# FILE HISTORY US 6,088,802

PATENT: 6,088,802 INVENTORS: Bialick, William P. Sutherland, Mark J. Dolphin Peterson, Janet L. Rowland, Thomas K. Skeba, Kirk W. Housley, Russell D.

# TITLE: Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

1

APPLICATION NO: FILED: 04 JUN 1997

ISSUED: 11 JUL 2000

COMPILED: 03 OCT 2016

WILLIAM P. SIALICK, C. JANET L. DOLPHIN PETER CA: KIRK W. SNEWA, FRC. VERIFIED	PATENT DATE JUL 1 CLASS 7/3 ARM DOCUMES MU ARM DOCUMES MU SOLL BEL VEOEP MONTE CAS PUS			T ER 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ROUP ART UNIT	
WILLIAM F. SIALICK, CA JANET L. DOLPHIN PETTE CA: KIRK W. SNEDA. FRO VERIFIED	CLASS 743	SUBCLASS . However E. However E. However SELUCION	200	2 <b>(</b> 3 HEE) 3 K. 4 F. ,	ROUP ART UNIT	
WILLIAM F. SIALICK, C. JANET L. DOLPHIN PETER CA: KIRK W. BRENA. FROM **CONTINUING DAY:**** VERIFIED WOR	ARU D'ULLE, MU Soil Belveder Moni, Cat Pus 440 meterteset	s Herry El Criss SELL Ys Dev	0 - 099 1740MA 1410 PA	GHER GHER Lenn	ROWLAND, L	TAD, CALL,
**CONTINUING DAY .**** VERIFIED	化化化合金 化化化合金	4:4:4			CERNDON, M	Gi.
wore but ille ba					BEST	COPY
- 4/ 9/ 8						· ·
VERIFIED	\$\$#\$#################					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
11/10/98						
FORE IGN FILING LUCENS				******	* SMALLERT	IIA research
35 USC 119 conditions met ves C po		DRWGS.	CLAIMS	CLAIMS	RECEIVED	DOCKET NO.
DAVID E GRAHAN 1337 CHEWPON AMENNE MILPITAS DA 95005	2 The Party of the State					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	1 - 198   LUGINE   7.1.		7 F* C2G	U.S. DEP	9611-1. 1 5 PT. OF COMM./ PAT. &	TM-PTO-436Ĺ (Rev.12-9¤)
PARTS OF APPLICATION FILED SEPARATELY				<u></u>	AD, ADDING	1 6/8/97
NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE MAILED				Τ	CLAIMS otal Claims 39	ALLOWED Print Claim
ISSUE FEE Amount Due Date Paid	Assistant Examiner	es	1		DRA	WING
\$ 60CAS. 00 9-14-04	LY PRIMARY	V. MUA (EXAMINE	R	5 15 15	7 / SSUE	
Label Area	PREPARE	D FOR ISS	UE	iner N		.0~1
	WARNING: The Information by the Unit Patent & The Patent	ation disclosed ed States Cod rademark Offic	a nerein ma le Title 35, se is restrict	y be restr Sections ed to auti	ricted. Unauthorized di: 122, 181 and 368. Po horized employees and	sclosure may be prohibited assession outside the U.S. contractors only.
Form PTO-436A (Rev. 8/92)	e fee in fi	LR	Formal D	Drawingi	s (shts) set	Fae

# 6,088,802

• •

# PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY

# **Transaction History**

Date	Transaction Description
06-04-1997	Workflow - Drawings Finished
06-04-1997	Workflow - Drawings Matched with File at Contractor
06-04-1997	Workflow - Drawings Received at Contractor
07-14-1997	Initial Exam Team nn
08-07-1997	IFW Scan & PACR Auto Security Review
11-04-1997	Notice MailedApplication IncompleteFiling Date Assigned
03-05-1998	Application Is Now Complete
03-12-1998	Application Dispatched from OIPE
03-12-1998	Application Dispatched from OIPE
04-07-1998	Case Docketed to Examiner in GAU
08-15-1998	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
08-15-1998	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
10-08-1998	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
10-08-1998	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
11-23-1998	Non-Final Rejection
12-11-1998	Mail Non-Final Rejection
03-15-1999	Response after Non-Final Action
03-18-1999	Supplemental Response
03-25-1999	Date Forwarded to Examiner
03-30-1999	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
03-30-1999	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
04-01-1999	Date Forwarded to Examiner
06-07-1999	Mail Notice of Allowance
06-07-1999	Notice of Allowance Data Verification Completed
06-23-1999	Workflow - Drawings Received at Contractor
06-24-1999	Workflow - Drawings Sent to Contractor
09-13-1999	Workflow - Incoming Correspondence - Finish
09-13-1999	Workflow - Incoming Correspondence - Begin
09-13-1999	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
09-13-1999	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed
09-13-1999	UnMatched Papers in Pubs
09-13-1999	UnMatched Papers in Pubs
09-14-1999	Issue Fee Payment Verified
12-16-1999	Mail Miscellaneous Communication to Applicant
12-16-1999	Miscellaneous Communication to Applicant - No Action Count
01-04-2000	Workflow - File Sent to Contractor
05-26-2000	Workflow - Complete WF Records for Drawings
05-28-2000	Application Is Considered Ready for Issue
06-23-2000	Issue Notification Mailed
07-11-2000	Recordation of Patent Grant Mailed
06-25-2008	Correspondence Address Change
01-12-2012	ENTITY STATUS SET TO UNDISCOUNTED (INITIAL DEFAULT SETTING
	OR STATUS CHANGE)
03-02-2015	Change in Power of Attorney (May Include Associate POA)
03-02-2015	Correspondence Address Change
09-29-2016	File Marked Found

PATENT APPLICATION PTO **U** S APPROVED FOR LICENSE 869305 , ÷ . . INITIALS \_ 08869305 Date Received or Mailed Date Entered CONTENTS or Counteo \_ 1. Application pąpers. 211 Ň 112 Autor & Q.C. . < 3. l M T 10. ¢ ٠ 5. 5 6.7 3/a5/99 7 21 f B . 8. 9. Allow 'n. 12. . 13. 1) -hf:- G 14. Forma Lingvilling L 15. • \_ 16. \_ 17. i 18. .. ۰. \_ 19. \_\_\_\_\_ . \_ 20. \_\_\_\_\_ \_21. \_ . \_ 22. \_ . 23. . 24. -25. 26. \_\_\_\_ 27. \_ 28. \_ • . 29. . 30. \_ 31. \_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_ 32. \_\_\_\_\_ 4



75										•			•													
Class					Γ	POSITION												7								
Щ	·					0	CLA	SS	IFI	ER		T					5		-   .	$\overline{V}$	15	1.	;;	-		
	,					E	XA	M	NE	2	<u> </u>					10	27	$\overline{\mathcal{O}}$			ن ک	11	7	1		
						]	YF	PIST	•													1				
i.						1	/EF	RIFI	ER							مستقر مشاكلين و			_							
					-	CORPS CORH.								7	·				/		-					
214 141	·				$\vdash$	SPEC. HAND			┼─		-11.01					4	-									
-4						[	DR/	4FT	INC	3		-			10210				+		13	1.11		-		
	• •												IN	DEX	OFC	CLAIM	S									
1/10%				aim	<del>مدند</del> م	<u>_</u> g	<u> </u>	Da					٦				Г		<del></del>							
	•		al O	inal	13	10	È			1	T		1.				ŀ			T	Τ			Т	Т	Γ
11			Ē	ą	N	2	<b>}</b>	ļ	ļ				- 3. Å	1 				Ē	Di lo					<u> </u> .		
,	•		2	2	Ŧ	7			-	•		-	-				╞		51	╉	┢	+	+		┼	
nln	•.		53	3	+	11 4		[	Į.	· · ·	-					t in the second s	~ · [		53		1	-	1			<b>_</b>
ł			3	5	Ŷ	E						+					-		55							<u> </u>
	, ,	6		00	0	11 11		┼─-		┼─	┼─	+	-				ŀ		56 57	+-	+	+	+			
. · ;		v	$\prod_{12}$	( <u>(</u> )	T.	11/11			-	-	-	1	-				F		58	1	-	$\downarrow$	1	1		
· · · ·	· .	,	15	10	+	2							-				ŀ		30				E	1-		
et i	н н Ю		19 22	11	i-	11 11				-	┼╌	+	-				-	-+	31 32	+			$\vdash$			ļ
be _	·		23	9	C,	1 #		-	-		-	-	]					1	3							
 	•		25	15	Ť	3					1						ŀ	-	5						-	
÷.,			26 37	16 17	1:	11		-		+	+		-				╞	-+'	56 57	╉	+	+		+		
			35	18		2			-	-		-	-				F	-	58 39	1	-	F	-	F		<b>—</b>
<del>.</del>			14	20	F	2				ţ_							ŀ		70					$\Box$		
		•	17	22 22	1	4					┼╌		-				╞	-	71	+-	+		-	-		
		8	18	23	Ŧ	*=		<u> </u>			<u> </u>		1				F		73	1			-			
;			20	25	Ž	ä											F		75		+					
PLIC			21		¥	=	<u> </u>	-	-	-	1	+	-]				F	-	76 77	+		+	+	+	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
ATEI			34	60	4	. <del>.</del>	-	<b>—</b>		<b>—</b>	F	-					F		78	1-	1	1-		1	_	
LO			37	<u>60</u>	4	M		1		<u> </u>		+	-	·	SYMBOLS	Rejected	þ		0	1	1	1	ţ	<u> </u>		
n	•		岁	ġ	Ž	-						+		(Throug	h numberal)	., Allowed Canceled Restricted	ŀ		31	+	$\pm$		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	-	<u> </u>
11	· ·		7	33 34		2					+	+				Non-elected			13			Ţ.		-		
	• •		2	35		7		-		1	1	+	j ć			Objected			15					<b> </b>		
ן נ			13	37		13						+					-		37			1				
━━━┺	÷ •	16	26	38 39		11 11					-		-				-	-	18 19	+	+	+		+		
			27	40		~		<u> </u>	<u> </u>		1_	ļ	]						0	1	1	1				
Lab			30	42		1						·					F		)1 )2		1-			-		
ЧIŔ	,		31	43 44		a a							-				F		3	+-	+-	$\vdash$	-	$\vdash$		<u> </u>
			ž⊈ Į	45 46		ų		[		-	1						þ		5	1	+	<b>†</b>		<u> </u>		
				47													E	9	7	$\pm$		-				
				48													Г	1	8	Γ			1	[		

SEARCHED Class Sub. Date Exmr. 188.01 395 110/98 LUN 187.01. 11/10/98 RUK RUR 186 11/10/48 Å.K 4. 380 25 49 6/1/499 Lut! 200 201 202 713 713 713 **SEARCH NOTES** update Search full 6/1/99 theabore Subclosses 7 Class 380 Date Exmr. MAYA 9/17/98 RUA AP3 11/10/98 KUK ٦ 31 INTERFERENCE SEARCHED Class Sub. Date Exmr. 6/2/99 6/2/99 6/2/99 200 201 713 713 713 202

# United States Patent [19]

# Bialick et al.

#### [54] PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY

- [75] Inventors: William P. Bialick, Clarksville, Md.; Mark J. Sutherland, Milpitas, Calif.; Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson, Belvedere, Calif.; Thomas K. Rowland, Los Gatos, Calif.; Kirk W. Skeba, Fremont, Calif.; Russell D. Housley, Herndon, Va.
- [73] Assignee: Spyrus, Inc., Santa Clara, Calif.
- [21] Appl. No.: 08/869,305
- [22] Filed: Jun. 4, 1997
- [52] U.S. Cl. 713/200; 713/201; 713/202
- [56] References Cited

#### U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,709,136	11/1987	Watanabe 235/379
4,910,776	3/1990	Dyke
5,191,611	3/1993	Lang
5,282,247	1/1994	McLean et al 380/4
5,297,206	3/1994	Orton
5,442,704	8/1995	Holtey 380/23
5,457,590	10/1995	Barrett et al 360/133
5,473,692	12/1995	Davis
5,491,827	2/1996	Holtey 395/800
5,524,134	6/1996	Gustafson et al
5,537,544	7/1996	Morisawa et al 395/188.01
5,546,463	8/1996	Caputo et al
5,548,721	8/1996	Denslow
5,610,981	3/1997	Mooney et al
5,630,174	5/1997	Stone, III et al 395/883
5,640,302	6/1997	Kikinis
5,694,335	12/1997	Hollenberg
5,742,683	4/1998	Lee et al
5,770,849	6/1998	Novis et al
5,790,674	8/1998	Houvener et al

# 

 [11]
 Patent Number:
 6,088,802

 [45]
 Date of Patent:
 Jul. 11, 2000

WO 82/03286 9/1982 WIPO . WO 97/29416 8/1997 WIPO .

# OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. application No. 08/869,120, Bialick et al., filed Jun. 4, 1997, pending.

Primary Examiner-Ly V. Hua

Attorney, Agent, or Firm-David R. Graham

# [57] ABSTRACT

The invention enables a peripheral device to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device, transmitted to the peripheral device from another device or input to the peripheral device by a person). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral device. The defined interac-tions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification). The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device.

### 39 Claims, 9 Drawing Sheets





U.S. Patent



U.S. Patent

Jul. 11, 2000

Sheet 3 of 9

6,088,802



FIG. 4



FIG. 5

6,088,802



FIG. 6



Jul. 11, 2000





U.S. Patent













# PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY

1

#### CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

This application is related to the commonly owned, co-pending United States patent Application entitled "Modular Security Device," by William P. Bialick, Mark J. Sutherland, Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson, Thomas K. Rowland, Kirk W. Skeba and Russell D. Housley, filed on the same date as the present application and having Attorney Docket No. SPY-003, the disclosure of which is incorporated by reference herein.

#### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

#### 1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to a peripheral, often portable, device (as well as the methods employed by such a peripheral device, and systems including such a peripheral device and a host computing device with which the peripheral device communicates) that can communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device, or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device.

### 2. Related Art

Computing capability is becoming increasingly portable. In particular, there are more and more portable peripheral devices that are adapted for communication with a host computing device (e.g., desktop computer, notebook computer or personal digital assistant) to enable particular functionality to be achieved. These portable peripheral devices can take a variety of physical forms (e.g., PCMCIA cards, smart cards, CD-ROMs) and can perform an assortment of functions (e.g., storage, communications and cryptography).

However, while portable computing affords a number of advantages, it has a significant disadvantage in that the 40 computational environment (including the portable peripheral devices, the host computing devices in which they are used, and any other computational devices that communicate with those devices) is more susceptible to security breaches, i.e., unauthorized access to, or modification of, 45 programs and/or data resident within the environment. Consequently, cryptographic devices and methods have been developed for use with such computational environments (as well as other computational environments) to enable increased levels of environment security to be 50 obtained.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of a prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device. In FIG. 1, a system 100 includes a host computing device 101 and a portable device 102. The host computing device 101 and portable device 102 are adapted to enable communication between the devices 101 and 102. The host computing device 101 includes a security mechanism 101*a* (which can be embodied by appropriately configured hardware, software and/or firmware, such as, for example, a general purpose microprocessor operating in accordance with instructions of one or more computer programs stored in a data storage device such as a hard disk) which can be directed to perform one or more cryptographic operations.

In the system 100, if it is desired to provide secured data from the host computing device 101 to the portable device 102, the host computing device 101 causes the security mechanism 101a to perform appropriate cryptographic operations on data before the data is transferred to the portable device 102. Similarly, the host computing device 101 can receive secured data from the portable device 102 and perform appropriate cryptographic operations on the data to convert the data into a form that enables the data to be accessed and/or modified by a person who is authorized to do so.

A significant deficiency of the system 100 is that the security mechanism 101a is itself typically not adequately secure. It is commonly accepted that the components (including hardware, software and/or firmware) of most host computing devices are inherently insecure. This is because the system design of host computing devices is, typically, intentionally made open so that components made by different manufacturers can work together seamlessly. Thus, an unauthorized person may obtain knowledge of the operation of the security mechanism 101a (e.g., identify a cryptographic key), thereby enabling that person to gain access to, and/or modify, the (thought to be secured) data.

FIG. 2 is a block diagram of another prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device. In FIG. 2, a system 200 includes a host computing device 201, a portable device 202 and a security device 203. The host computing device 201, the portable device 202 and security device 203 are adapted to enable communication between the devices 201 and 202, and between the devices 201 and 203. The security device 203 includes appropriately configured hardware, software and/or firmware which can be directed to perform one or more cryptographic operations.

In the system 200, if it is desired to provide secured data from the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202, the host computing device 201 first causes data to be transferred to the security device 203, where appropriate cryptographic operations are performed on the data. The secured data is then transferred back to the host computing device 201, which, in turn, transfers the secured data to the portable device 202. Similarly, the host computing device 201 can receive secured data from the portable device 202 by, upon receipt of secured data, transferring the secured data to the security device 203, which performs appropriate cryptographic operations on the data to convert the data into a form that enables the data to be accessed and/or modified by a person who is authorized to do so, then transfers the unsecured data back to the host computing device 201.

The system 200 can overcome the problem with the system 100 identified above. The security device 203 can be constructed so that the cryptographic functionality of the device 203 can itself be made secure. (Such a security device is often referred to as a security "token.") An unauthorized person can therefore be prevented (or, at least, significantly deterred) from obtaining knowledge of the operation of the security device 203, thereby preventing (or significantly deterring) that person from gaining access to, and/or modifying, the secured data.

However, the system 200 may still not always ensure adequately secured data. In particular, unsecured data may be provided by the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202 if the host computing device 201 whether through inadvertent error or deliberate attack by a user of the host computing device 201, or through malfunction of the host computing device 201—fails to first transfer data to the security device 203 for appropriate cryptographic treatment before providing the data to the portable device 202. Additionally, the system 200 requires the use of two separate peripheral devices (portable device 202 and security device 203) to enable the host computing device 201 to exchange secured data with the portable device 202. For several reasons, this may be inconvenient. First, both 5 devices 202 and 203 may not be available at the time that it is desired to perform a secure data exchange (e.g., one may have been forgotten or misplaced). Second, even if both devices 202 and 203 are available, it may not be possible to connect both devices 202 and 203 at the same time to the 10 host computing device 201, making use of the devices 202 and 203 cumbersome and increasing the likelihood that unsecured data is provided by the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

A peripheral device according to the invention can be used to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device) or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral 25 device, transmitted to the peripheral device from another device or input to the peripheral device by a person). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral device. The defined interactions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification), as described further below. The peripheral device can be implemented so that the peripheral device can be operated in any one of multiple user-selectable modes: a security functionality only mode, a target functionality mode, and a combined security and target functionality mode. The 40 peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral 45 device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device

A peripheral device according to the invention can advantageously enable application of security operations to a wide 50 variety of interactions with a host computing device. In particular, a peripheral device according to the invention can accomplish this without necessity to use two peripheral devices: one that performs the security operations and one that performs the defined interaction. This can, for example, minimize the possibility that the device adapted to perform the defined interaction will be used with the host computing system without proper application of security operations to that interaction. Moreover, the provision of in-line security in a peripheral device according to the invention enables a more secure exchange of data between a host computing device and the peripheral device, overcoming the problems identified above in previous systems for performing security operations on data exchanged between such devices. Additionally, implementing a modular device according to the invention so that the performance of security operations by the modular device is transparent can reduce or eliminate

the need to modify aspects of the operation of the host computing device (e.g., device drivers of the host computing device), making implementation and use of a data security system including the modular device simpler and easier. Thus, the possibility that a user will use the system incorrectly (e.g., fail to apply security operations to an interaction with the host computing device, or apply the security operations incorrectly or incompletely) is reduced. Making the security operations transparent can also enhance the security of those operations.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG, 1 is a block diagram of a prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device.

FIG. 2 is a block diagram of another prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device.

FIG. 3A is a block diagram of a system according to the invention.

FIG. **3B** is a perspective view of a physical implementation of the system of FIG. **3A** according to one embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of a peripheral device according to an embodiment of the invention,

FIG. 5 is a flow chart of a method, according to an embodiment of the invention, for initiating use of a system according to the invention.

FIG. 6 is a block diagram of a system, according to an embodiment of the invention, illustrating operation of the system during a method according to the invention as in FIG. 5.

FIGS. 7A and 7B is a flow chart of a method, according to an embodiment of the invention, for using a peripheral device according to the invention.

FIG. 8 is a block diagram of a peripheral device according to another embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 9A is a block diagram illustrating the flow of data through the interface control device of FIG. 8.

FIG. 9B is a block diagram of a particular embodiment of an interface control device for use in a peripheral device according to the invention.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

FIG. 3A is a block diagram of a system 300 according to the invention. The system 300 includes a host computing device 301 and a peripheral device 302 that communicate via a communications interface 303. Herein, "peripheral device" can refer to any device that operates outside of a host computing device and that is connected to the host computing device. The peripheral device 302 includes a security mechanism 302a that enables security operations (examples of which are described in more detail below) to be performed on data that is stored within the host comput-ing device 301, data that is transmitted from the host computing device 301 to the peripheral device 302, or data that is transmitted from the peripheral device to the host computing device 301. As explained in more detail below, the peripheral device 302 also provides additional functionality (referred to herein as "target functionality") to the system 300, such as, for example, the capability to store data in a solid-state disk storage device, the capability to enable communications from the host computing device 301 to

another device, the capability to accept biometric input to enable user authentication to the host computing device **301**, and the capability to receive and read a smart card inserted into the peripheral device **302**.

Generally, the communications interface 303 can be any 5 embodied by any of a variety of communication interface such as a wireless communications interface, a PCMCIA interface, a smart card interface, a serial interface (such as an RS-232 interface), a parallel interface, a SCSI interface or an IDE interface. Each embodiment of the communications interface 303 includes hardware present in each of the host computing device 301 and peripheral device 302 that operates in accordance with a communications protocol (which can be embodied, for example, by software stored in a memory device and/or firmware that is present in the host computing device 301 and/or peripheral device 302) appropriate for that type of communications interface, as known to those skilled in the art. Each embodiment of the communications interface 303 also includes mechanisms to enable 20 physical engagement, if any, between the host computing device 301 and peripheral device 302.

Generally, the security mechanism 302a can be configured to perform any electronic data security operation (herein, referred to simply as "security operation") including, for example, operations that provide one or more of the basic cryptographic functions, such as maintenance of data confidentiality, verification of data integrity, user authentication and user non-repudiation. Particular security operations that can be implemented in a peripheral device according to the invention are described in more detail below.

The security mechanism 302a can be, for example, embodied as a security token. Herein, "security token" refers to a device that performs security operations and that includes one or more mechanisms (such as, for example, use of a hardware random number generator and/or protected memory) to provide security for the content of those operations.

FIG. 3B is a perspective view of a physical implementation of the system 300 of FIG. 3A, according to one embodiment of the invention. In FIG. 3B, the peripheral device 302 is embodied as a card 312 that can be inserted into a corresponding slot 313 formed in a portable computer 311 that, in FIG. 3B, embodies the host computing device 301. Often a peripheral device according to the invention is a portable device, such as the card 312 shown in FIG. 3B. Herein, "portable device" can refer generally to any device that is capable of being easily carried by hand.

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of a peripheral device 400 50 according to an embodiment of the invention. The peripheral device 400 includes security functionality 401, target functionality 402 and a host interface 403 that are formed together as part of a single physical device. For example, the security functionality 401 and target functionality 402 can 55 be enclosed in a single, card-like housing (designated in FIG. 4 by the numeral 404) conforming to a PCMCIA card or smart card standard.

The peripheral device **400** can have a number of advantageous characteristics. The peripheral device **400** can be 60 implemented in a manner that enables the security operations of the security functionality **401** to be performed in a manner that is transparent to a host computing device (and, depending upon the particular implementation of the peripheral device **400**, to a user of a system including the peripheral device **400**) of a system according to the invention, so that the host computing device (and, perhaps, user) is aware

only of the presence of the target functionality 402. Additionally, the peripheral device 400 can be implemented so that security operations are performed "in-line," i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the target functionality provided by the peripheral device. Further, the peripheral device 400 enables a wide variety of secure target functionality to be easily provided to a host computing device.

FIG. 5 is a flow chart of a method 500, according to an embodiment of the invention, for initiating use of a system according to the invention. The method 500 enables an aspect of the invention in which the presence of security functionality as part of a peripheral device is not detected by a host computing device, thus making the security functionality transparent to the host computing device and, depending upon the particular manner in which the security functionality is implemented, to a user of the system.

FIG. 6 is a block diagram of a system 600, according to an embodiment of the invention, illustrating operation of the system 600 during a method according to the invention such as the method 500 of FIG. 5. The system 600 includes a host computing device 601 and a peripheral device 602. The host computing device 601 includes a display device 603a (e.g., a conventional computer display monitor) and user input device 603b (e.g., a keyboard, mouse, trackball, joystick or other appropriate device), referred to collectively hereinafter as user interface device 603. The host computing device 601 also includes, mounted within a housing 604, a processing device 605, a memory device 606, an input/output (I/O) device 607 for enabling communication with the user interface device 603, and an input/output (I/O) device 608 for enabling communication with peripheral device 602. The devices 605, 606, 607 and 608 can each be implemented by conventional such devices and can communicate with each other via a conventional computer bus 609, as is well known and understood. The peripheral device 602 includes security functionality 611, a memory device 612, an input/output (I/O) device 613 for enabling communication with the host computing device 601 and target functionality 614. The security functionality 611, memory device 612, I/O device 613 and target functionality 614 can each be implemented by conventional devices and can communicate with each other via a conventional computer bus 615, as is well known and understood. The host computing device 601 and the peripheral device 602 are shown in simplified form in FIG. 6 to facilitate clarity in illustration of this aspect of the invention; as described in more detail below and as understood by those skilled in the art, the host computing device 601 and the peripheral device 602 can-and typically will-include other devices not shown in FIG. 6.

Returning to FIG. 5, use of a system according to the invention begins when, as shown by step 501, a user of the system connects a peripheral device according to the invention to a host computing device. Such connection can occur in any manner that enables the peripheral device to communicate with the host computing device. Frequently, this will occur as a result of a physical connection of the peripheral device to the host computing device. (In general, such physical connection can occur either before or after the host computing device begins operating; however, in the former case, subsequent steps of the method 500-with the exception of, depending upon the implementation of the peripheral device, the step 503-cannot be performed until the host computing device begins operating.) For example, the peripheral device can be embodied in a card or disk (e.g. a card conforming to a PCMCIA form factor as established

by the appropriate standard) that is inserted into a corresponding socket formed in the host computing device. Or, the peripheral device can be embodied in a housing from which a cord extends, a plug of the cord being inserted into a mating receptacle formed in the host computing device. However, such physical connection need not necessarily occur; the peripheral device can also be connected to the host computing device by any type of wireless communication for which the host computing device contains an appropriate interface.

Once connection between the peripheral device and the host computing device is made, the host computing device detects the presence of the peripheral device, as shown by step **502**. Such detection of the presence of a peripheral device is typically enabled as a standard aspect of the operating system software of the host computing device.

Typically, once the presence of a new peripheral device is detected by the operating system software of the host computing device, the operating system software (or companion software program) also identifies the type of the  $_{20}$ peripheral device. This can be accomplished, for example, by a standard software device driver (hereinafter, "host driver") for devices of the type that use the host computing device interface that is being used by the peripheral device 602. In FIG. 6, the host driver is shown stored in the memory section 606a of the memory device 606 of the host com-puting device 601. (The Card Services or Socket Services programs that often are bundled with the Windows95TM operating system software for use in performing various "housekeeping" functions associated with a PCMCIA interface are examples of such drivers.) However, in the method 500, before the operating system software can perform such identification, the peripheral device according to the invention suspends operation of this aspect of the operating system software, so that the peripheral device can establish its identity, as shown by step **503**, and explained further below. As will be apparent from that explanation, performance of the step 503 advantageously enables the peripheral device to assume the identity of the target functionality that is part of the peripheral device. Since, as described else-where herein, a peripheral device according to the invention can include a variety of types of target functionality, the peripheral device can take a variety of identities.

The particular manner in which operation of the operating system software is suspended so that the peripheral device 45 can establish its identity can depend on the characteristics of the operating system software and/or the device interface. However, for many combinations of operating system software and device interface, the operating system software waits for confirmation that the device connected to the 50 device interface is ready for further interaction with the operating system software before the operating system software seeks to identify the type of the device connected to the interface (the standard for PCMCIA interfaces, for example, specifies such operation). In such cases, the peripheral 55 device can be configured to delay informing the operating system software that the peripheral device is ready for further interaction until the peripheral device has established its identity.

The following description of one way in which the step 60 503 can be implemented can best be understood by reference to the system 600 shown in FIG. 6. One way in which the operating system software of a host computing device can identify the type of a peripheral device is to access a known memory section of a memory device of the peripheral 65 device, as established by an interface standard developed for that type of peripheral device, that stores data representing

the type of the peripheral device. This is true for a variety of types of peripheral devices, such as, for example, peripheral devices that conform to the PCMCIA standard. (The PCM-CIA standard, for example, includes a specification, called the Card Information Structure, that defines, among other things, a location in a portion of memory of a PCMCIA card, denoted as "attribute memory", that stores data identifying the type of the PCMCIA card.) In the system **600**, the peripheral device **602** is such a device. The memory section of the memory device **612** of the peripheral device **602** which the host computing device **601** seeks to access is shown in FIG. **6** as the memory section **612***a*, and the data stored therein is referred to herein as "peripheral device identification data."

The peripheral device 602 can be implemented so that the peripheral device 602 assumes the identity of the target functionality 614 (whether or not the security functionality of the peripheral device is also being used). This enables the host computing device 601 to interact with the peripheral device 602 as though the peripheral device 602 were a device of the type of the target functionality 614, without recognizing that security functionality 611 is present that may be performing security operations. Thus, the need to modify aspects of the operation of the host computing device (e.g., the host device driver) to enable performance of security operations is reduced or eliminated, making implementation and use of a data security system including the peripheral device 602 simpler and easier. Since use of the data security system is easier (e.g., a user need not provide input to cause the host driver to be appropriately tailored to enable desired interaction with a security device), the possibility that a user will use the system incorrectly (e.g., fail to apply security operations to an interaction with the host computing device, or apply the security operations incorrectly or incompletely) is reduced.

Though, as shown in FIG. 6, the peripheral device 602 includes security functionality 611 and target functionality 614, the system 600 can be operated so that only the security functionality 611 is used. The peripheral device 602 and peripheral device driver (discussed below) can be implemented so that, when the peripheral device 602 is operated in that way, the peripheral device identification data stored in the memory location 612a identifies the peripheral device 602 as a security device.

Returning to FIG. 5, after the peripheral device has established its identity, the host computing device identifies the peripheral device, as shown by step 504. This can be implemented as part of the host driver, as indicated above.

Once the host computing device has identified the peripheral device (and other host computing device operating system software operations concluded, if applicable), the user can begin using the peripheral device (in particular, the security functionality of the peripheral device), as shown by step **505** of the method **500**. Such use can be enabled by one or more software programs (referred to collectively hereinafter as a "peripheral device driver," though such programs can include programs in addition to those conventionally termed "drivers," such as programs conventionally termed "applications") that are executed by the host computing device.

The use of a separate driver to control and interact with the security functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be advantageous because it reduces or eliminates the need to modify the host driver. As a practical matter, such modification of the host driver can likely only be accomplished by requiring a user to interact with a standard host driver to appropriately modify the standard host driver. This is undesirable because the user may forget to modify the driver or modify the driver incorrectly or incompletely.

The peripheral device driver can have previously been installed on a data storage device (e.g., hard disk) of the host computing device (in FIG. 6, the peripheral device driver is shown stored in the memory section 606b of the memory device 606 of the host computing device 601), or can be made accessible to the host computing device via an appropriate interface (such as a floppy disk drive, CD-ROM drive or network connection) at a time when the user wishes to initiate interaction between the host computing device and the peripheral device. Additionally, when a peripheral device according to the invention is used with a host computing device which utilizes operating system software that supports the feature informally referred to as "plug and play", it is also possible to store the peripheral device driver in a memory device of the peripheral device and configure the peripheral device so that, when the peripheral device is connected for the first time to a particular host computing device, the host computing device automatically provides the user with the opportunity to instruct the host computing device to cause the peripheral device driver to be transferred from the peripheral device to the host computing device.

FIG. 7 is a flow chart of a method 700, according to an embodiment of the invention, for using a peripheral device according to the invention. It is to be understood that the method 700 shown in FIG. 7 is not the only way to enable the aspects of use of a peripheral device according to the <sub>30</sub> invention that are illustrated in FIG. 7; as can be readily appreciated by those skilled in the art, such aspects can be implemented using any of a variety of other appropriate methods. Further, the use of a peripheral device according to the invention can include aspects not illustrated in FIG. 7; is shown merely to aid in the illustration of certain aspects of the invention, and should not be interpreted as restricting the manner in which a peripheral device according to the <sub>40</sub> invention can be used.

To begin using a peripheral device according to the invention, a user instructs the host computing device to begin execution of the peripheral device driver, as shown by step **701** of the method **700**, the user having obtained 45 knowledge of the appropriate command to begin execution of the peripheral device driver in any appropriate manner (e.g., from a user manual accompanying the peripheral device driver and/or the peripheral device). In general, the steps of the method **700** occur as a result of operation of a 50 peripheral device driver; however, operation of the host driver may be necessary or desirable to enable some aspects of the method **700** (e.g., execution of a transaction, as in steps **708**, **712** and **715**).

As indicated above, a peripheral device according to the 55 invention can be implemented so that the host driver cannot detect the presence of the security functionality of the peripheral device. In such case, the peripheral device driver enables the detection of the security functionality, as shown by step **702** of the method **700**. This can be accomplished by 60 including instructions as part of the peripheral device driver that, when the peripheral device driver first begins executing, cause the peripheral device driver to access a predefined location of a memory device of the peripheral device (in FIG. **6**, the memory section **612***b*) for data that 65 identifies whether the peripheral device is a device having security functionality that is compatible with the peripheral

device driver. If the peripheral device is such a device, then the peripheral device driver can enable the user to make use of the security functionality of the peripheral device. Further, the peripheral device driver can be implemented, as shown in FIG. 7, so that, if the proper security functionality is not detected, execution of the peripheral device driver terminates, preventing use of the peripheral device. Alternatively, the peripheral device driver can be implemented so that, if the proper security functionality is not detected, the target functionality of the peripheral device can be used without the security functionality of the peripheral device.

A peripheral device according to the invention can, in general, be operated in one of three modes: 1) a mode in which only the security functionality is used, 2) a mode in which both the security functionality and the target functionality are used, and 3) a mode in which only the target functionality is used. The user can be enabled to, via the peripheral device driver, select any one of the three modes of operation. However, in some applications, it may be desirable to inhibit operation in one or two of the modes. In particular, it may be desirable to prevent operation of the peripheral device in the last of the above-listed modes, i.e., mode in which the security functionality is not used, if it is desired to ensure that use of the target functionality can only occur with the application of one or more security operations. This could be accomplished by implementing the peripheral device driver so that the option to operate in that mode is not presented to the user, or the peripheral device could be configured during manufacture to prohibit operation in that mode. For example, if the target functionality is embodied as a communications device or a memory device, it may be desirable to ensure that unencrypted data cannot be transferred via the communications device or stored in the memory device, whether done inadvertently or on purpose.

In the method **700**, all three of the above-listed modes are available for use. In the step **703** of the method **700**, a determination is made as to whether the security functionality is to be used. (As noted above, such use may be required.) If yes, the peripheral device is operated in one of the first two modes above (security functionality only, or security functionality plus peripheral functionality); if no, the third mode is used (peripheral functionality only).

The peripheral device driver can be implemented so that the user must successfully enter an acceptable access code (e.g., a password or PIN) before the user is enabled to use the peripheral device. In particular, it can be desirable to require an access code before enabling a user to use the security functionality, thus establishing a layer of security that protects the integrity of the security operations themselves. In the method **700**, as shown by the step **704**, an acceptable access code must be entered by the user before the security functionality of the peripheral device can be used. An access code can be entered, for example, by inputting the access code in a conventional manner using a user interface device (e.g., keyboard) of the host computing device. Or, an access code can be entered using particular embodiments of target functionality (such as a biometric device, discussed in more detail below) that is part of the peripheral device according to the invention.

Advantageously, an access code can be used not only to control access to the security (or other) functionality of the peripheral device, but also to identify a "personality" of the user. Each personality is represented by data that establishes certain characteristics of operation of the peripheral device, such as, for example, restrictions on operation of the periph-

eral device (e.g., limitations on the types of security operations that can be performed) or specification of operating parameters or characteristics (e.g., cryptographic keys or specification of a particular incarnation of a type of security algorithm, such as a particular encryption algorithm). A single user can have multiple personalities: each personality might, for example, correspond to a different capacity in which a user acts. Data representing personalities and corresponding user access codes can be stored in a memory device of the peripheral device.

Upon receipt of an acceptable access code, the peripheral device driver controls the host computing device to present a user interface that enables the user to effect desired control of the peripheral device, and, in particular, to use the peripheral device to perform security operations, as described below. (If access codes are also used to identify personalities, upon receipt of an acceptable access code, the peripheral device driver can also access and retrieve the data representing the corresponding personality, so that the operation of the peripheral device can be controlled accordingly.) The user interface for enabling a user to operate the peripheral device can be implemented in any of a variety of well known ways (e.g., as a graphical user interface) using methods and apparatus that are well known to those skilled in the art. Generally, the user interface enables the user to perform any functionality that is provided by the peripheral device, as described in more detail elsewhere herein.

As indicated above, a peripheral device according to the invention can be operated in any of three modes. Once an acceptable access code has been entered, the peripheral device driver can enable the user to select one of the three modes, as shown in step 705 of the method 700. (Alternatively, as mentioned above, it may be desirable to present the user only with the option of choosing the security functionality only mode or the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, so as to eliminate the possibility that the user will effect an unsecured use of the target functionality.) If the security functionality only mode, or the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, is selected, then the user interface (and the underlying peripheral device driver) enables the user to input all desired or required instructions regarding the security operations to be performed for a particular "transaction" (e.g., a storage of data in a memory device, a transmission of data by a 45 communications device, or an exchange of data with a smart card reader device), as shown by steps 706 and 710 of the method 700. For example, the user interface can enable the user to select data to which security operations are to be performed, specify the application of particular security 50 operations to data, or specify parameters or other informa tion required for a particular security operation. If the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, or the peripheral functionality only mode, is selected, then the user interface and peripheral device driver enable the user to input all desired or required instructions regarding use of the target functionality for the transaction, as shown by steps 707 and 711 of the method 700. For example, if the target functionality is embodied as a memory device, the user interface can enable the user to specify a name for the stored data. Or, for example, if the target functionality is embodied as a communications device, the user interface can enable the user to specify a destination (e.g., an electronic mail address) for the data.

Once the user has provided instructions in steps 706 and 707, in step 710, or in step 711, the transaction is executed, as shown by step 708 or step 712 of the method 700. After

execution of the transaction, the user can be allowed to execute further transactions, as shown by step **709** of the method **700**. It is also possible for the user to begin using another personality (by entering an appropriate access code), as shown by step **709** of the method **700**. Eventually, use of the peripheral device ends, as shown by step **718** of the method **700**.

The peripheral device and associated peripheral device driver can be implemented so that it is possible to use only the security functionality of the peripheral device. The peripheral device can be used in this manner to, for example, encrypt or decrypt data stored on the host computing device by receiving the data from the host computing device, encrypting or decrypting the data as appropriate, then returning the encrypted or decrypted data to the host computing device.

As indicated above, the peripheral device and associated peripheral device driver can be implemented so that it is possible to use only the target functionality of the peripheral device, even without entering an appropriate access code. In the method 700, such operation is shown by the steps 714, 715 and 716, which function in the same manner as steps **711**, **712** and **709**, described above. Using the peripheral device in this way can be useful, for example, when the target functionality is embodied as a biometric device, as described further below, that is used to perform user authentication. In particular, if the biometric device is to be used as the mechanism to enter the access code in step 704, operation in this mode may be necessary (depending on the capabilities of the biometric device) to enable such use of the biometric device. (Of course, in this case, security functionality, i.e., user authentication, is used as part of the step 715) The step 717 can also enable use of the security functionality to begin by causing a prompt for an appropriate access code to appear (step 704). Again, eventually, use of the peripheral device ends (step 718).

As described above, a peripheral device according to the invention that includes security functionality and target functionality can be implemented so that the host computing device is not aware of the presence of the security functionality. It may also be desirable to shield the user from knowledge of the presence of the security functionality and cause predetermined security operations to be performed automatically. This may be desirable so that, for example, it is not necessary for the user to provide input regarding the performance of security operations, thus eliminating the possibility that the user will neglect to provide such input, or will provide the input incorrectly or incompletely. Or, it may be desirable to make security operations transparent to users to enhance the security of those operations, since, if the performance of such operations is unknown, there will be no attempt to defeat the security provided by those operations. If such is the case, the peripheral device driver can be implemented so that the peripheral device can operate only in the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode (steps 710, 711, 712, 714, 715, 716 and 717 of the method 700 cannot be performed) and so that no indication (e.g., presentation of a user interface display that allows input of instructions regarding the performance of security operations, as in step 706 of the method 700) is given of the presence of the security functionality of the peripheral device. Rather, the user would simply be presented with options regarding operation of the target functionality (step 707 of the method 700). In such an implementation, the peripheral device driver can be implemented to automatically cause one or more predetermined security operations to be performed based upon a user-specified interaction with the target functionality, or the peripheral device can be configured to cause such security operations to be performed any time a specified interaction with the target functionality occurs.

A significant advantage of a peripheral device according to the invention is that the peripheral device can be imple-mented so that any of a variety of types of target functionality can be included as part of the peripheral device. In particular, as described in more detail below, the peripheral device includes an interface control device which enables and manages communications between and among the host computing device, a cryptographic processing device that is part of the peripheral device, and target functionality that is also part of the peripheral device. The interface control device can be adapted to provide an appropriate interface for each type of target functionality. Thus, in general, any desired target functionality can be used with a peripheral device according to the invention, so long as the target functionality is implemented so as to enable communication with an interface of the type presented. Those skilled in the art of data communications can readily understand how to implement such communication with target functionality in view of the detailed description below (see FIGS. 8, 9A and 9B) of an embodiment of a peripheral device according to the invention, and, in particular, an interface control device 25 of such a peripheral device.

For example, target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be embodied as a memory device adapted to enable non-volatile storage of data. In general, any such memory device can be used to embody such target functionality. More particularly, a solid-state disk storage device (e.g., NAN flash memory device) can advan-tageously be used. Illustratively, a memory device that can be used to embody target functionality in a peripheral device according to the invention can be a compact flash memory device, such as an ATA format flash disk drive. Other solid-state disk storage devices, such as SCSI disks and IDE disks can be used. The construction and operation of memory devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is well understood by those skilled in that art, so that, together with an understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface control device, a memory device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a memory device that embodies the target functionality can be used, for example, to securely store data in a manner that enables a user of the data to easily carry the data with them wherever they go

Target functionality of a peripheral device according to 50 the invention can also be embodied as a communications device adapted to enable communication between the host computing device and a remote device. In general, any such communications device can be used to embody target functionality. A communications device that can be used to embody target functionality in a peripheral device according to the invention can include, for example, a data communications modem (such as, for example, a conventional tele-phone line modem, an ISDN modem, a cable modem, or a wireless modem) or a LAN transceiver (either wired or wireless and, in the latter case, operating in, for example, the infrared or radiofrequency spectrum). The construction and operation of communication devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is well understood by those skilled in that art, so that, together with an understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface control device, a com14

munication device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a communications device that embodies target functionality can be used, for example, to encrypt electronic mail before transmission to an addressee. Or, such a peripheral device can be used, for example, to encrypt data files that a person wishes to securely transfer between a computing device at the person's place of work and a computing device at the person's home.

Target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can also be embodied as a biometric device, which is defined herein as any device that is adapted to receive input data regarding a physical characteristic of a person based upon a physical interaction of the person with the device. In general, any such biometric device can be used to embody target functionality. Biometric devices that can be used in a peripheral device according to the invention can include, for example, a fingerprint scanning device, a retinal scanning device or a faceprint scanning device.

In addition to conventional computational devices for storing and/or manipulating digital data, a biometric device includes a sensor for sensing the physical characteristic, and an analog-to-digital converter to transform the analog data representing the sensed characteristic into digital data. For example, a fingerprint scanning device includes a sensor upon which a person can place a finger, the sensor sensing the fingerprint of the finger, the content of the sensed fingerprint being converted into digital data by the device. Similarly, a retinal scanning device includes a sensor which can be placed proximate to a person's eye, the sensor sensing characteristics of the eye such as blood vessel pattern or iris pattern, the device translating the content of the sensed characteristics into digital data. The construction and operation of biometric devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is well understood by those skilled in that art, so that, together with an understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface control device, a biometric device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. Fingerprint scanning devices and retinal scanning devices that can readily be modified for use with the invention, i.e. to communicate with an interface control device according to the invention, are known to those skilled in that art. For example, fingerprint scanning devices such as those available from Identix Incorporated of Sunnyvale, Calif. can be used in a fingerprint scanning device for use with the invention.

A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a biometric device that embodies the target functionality can be used, for example, to enable user authentication to a host computing device before allowing access to particular data stored on the host computing device. Such user authentication can be accomplished by using a biometric device to obtain biometric data from a user and comparing the biometric data to an appropriate library of biometric data representing a predetermined group of people (e.g., authorized users). The library of data can be stored in a memory device of the peripheral device.

When a peripheral device including a fingerprint scanning device is embodied as a card adapted to be inserted into a slot of a host computing device (e.g., a slot conforming to a PCMCIA standard), it may be useful to make the peripheral device relatively long, so that a portion of the card on which the sensor is positioned can extend from the slot of the host computing device, thereby enabling fingerprints to be scanned while the peripheral device is inserted in the host computing device. Similarly, for a fingerprint scanning device, retinal scanning device or faceprint scanning device, it may be desirable to form the device so that the sensor is connected to the remainder of the device via an appropriate communication line, thus providing some range of movement of the sensor while the peripheral device is inserted in the host computing device, thereby facilitating use of the device.

A biometric device can be used in different ways with a system according to the invention, depending upon the capabilities of the biometric device. Using known apparatus and methods, a "smart" biometric device can be implemented with the capability to detect the presence of an input to the sensor, and, upon such detection, initiate acquisition of the biometric data and performance by the peripheral device can be used to perform user authentication as in step **704** of the method **700** above. Alternatively, the biometric device can be used to perform user authentication in a peripheral device can be used to perform user authentication in a peripheral device that allows operation without entry of a proper access code, as in steps **714** and **715** of the method **700**.

Target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can also be embodied as a smart card reader device adapted to communicate with a smart card, such as, for example, a smart card compliant with the ISO 7816 standard. Such a device can be implemented by adapting a conventional smart card reader, the construction and operation of which is well known to those skilled in that art, to provide a communications interface that enables the smart card reader to communicate with the interface control device. A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a smart card reader device can be used to provide security features to a smart card reader, or add to existing security features of a smart card reader.

It is to be understood that the examples given above are merely illustrative, not exhaustive, of the ways in which a peripheral device according to the invention can be used. Many more possibilities exist.

FIG. 8 is a block diagram of a peripheral device 800 according to another embodiment of the invention. The peripheral device 800 includes a cryptographic processing device 801, an interface control device 802, a first memory device 803, a second memory device 804, a real-time clock 805, a host computing device input/output (I/O) interface 806 and target functionality 807.

The host computing device I/O interface **806** enables communications between the peripheral device **800** and a 50 host computing device. The electrical and mechanical characteristics of the I/O interface **806**, as well as the protocol used to enable communication via the interface **806** are established in any manner that conforms to the industry standard specifications for an interface of that type. For example, a peripheral device according to the invention can be adapted for insertion into a PCMCIA slot of a host computing device. In such a peripheral device, the electrical and mechanical characteristics and communications protocol for the host computing device I/O interface **806** are established in conformance with the appropriate PCMCIA standards.

The cryptographic processing device 801 can be adapted to perform security operations. Generally, the cryptographic processing device 801 can be embodied by any processor capable of performing the cryptographic operations desired to be provided by the peripheral device 800. In one embodiment of the peripheral device 800, the cryptographic processing device 801 is a special purpose embedded processor, embodied on a single integrated chip and designated as MYK-82 (and also referred to by the name Capstone), which includes an ARM6<sup>™</sup> processor core and several special purpose cryptographic processing elements that have been developed by the Department of Defense. The construction and operation of the Capstone chip is known by those skilled in the art of cryptographic processing.

The first memory device 803 can be a non-volatile data storage device which can be used to store computer programs and persistent data. The first memory device 803 can be implemented by any appropriate such device (of which there are many conventional, readily available incarnations), such as, for example, a conventional flash memory device.

The second memory device **804** can be a volatile data storage device that can also be a rapidly accessible data storage device in which frequently used data and program instructions can be stored during operation of the peripheral device **800**. The second memory device **804** can also be implemented by any appropriate such device (of which there are many conventional, readily available embodiments), such as, for example, a conventional random access memory (RAM) device.

The real-time clock **805** enables the creation of time stamps, which can be used in a number of security operations. Advantageously, the time stamps created by the realtime clock **805** are more secure than those that could otherwise be produced by the relatively insecure clock of a host computing device. The real-time clock **805** includes a conventional battery backup device that maintains power to the real-time clock **805** when the peripheral device **800** is not in use (i.e., when power is not supplied to the peripheral device **800**, so that the correct time is continuously preserved within the peripheral device **800**. The real-time clock **805** (including battery backup) can be embodied by any conventional such device, such as the DS1302 clock available from Dallas Semiconductor of Dallas, Texas.

In the peripheral device 800, the interface control device 802 mediates the interaction between the host computing device, the target functionality 807 and the cryptographic processing device 801. In one embodiment of the peripheral device 800, the interface control device 802 is a conventional field-programmable gate array (FPGA) that is programmed to perform the functions that it is desired to implement with the interface control device 802, as described in more detail below. The interface control device 802, under control of the cryptographic processing device 801, can be adapted to enable the peripheral device 800 to assume the identity of the target functionality 807, as discussed above. The interface control device 802 also enables the in-line cryptography aspect of the invention, since the interface control device 802 controls the flow of data between the host computing device and the target functionality 807.

FIG. 9A is a block diagram illustrating the flow of data through the interface control device 802 of FIG. 8. Data transferred from a host computing device enters the peripheral device 800 (not demarcated in FIG. 9A) through the host computing device 1/O interface 806. The interface control device 802 presents the data to a cryptographic processing device interface 808 (not shown in FIG. 8). Depending on the configuration of the interface control device 802, as determined by operation of the peripheral device driver and/or by settings established during the manufacture of the peripheral device 800, the data may or

may not be processed by the cryptographic processing device 801 (FIG. 8). Typically (or, in some cases, necessarily), as discussed in more detail above, cryptographic processing will occur. The interface control device 802 then causes the data to be transferred to the target functionality 807. Data being transferred from the target functionality 807 to the host computing device follows a similar path in the reverse direction. When the target functionality 807 is not present or is not being used, data transferred from the host computing device, after being presented to the cryptographic processing device interface 808 and being processed by the cryptographic processing device 801, is caused to be transferred back to the host computing device I/O interface 806 (and, from there, to the host computing device) by the interface control device 802.

FIG. 9B is a block diagram of a particular embodiment of an interface control device 910 for use in a peripheral device according to the invention. As shown in FIG. 9B, the host computing device communicates via a PCMCIA interface and the target functionality is embodied by a compact flash memory device. Those skilled in the art will readily appreciate how the interface control device 910 can be modified for use with other host computing device interfaces and/or target functionalities.

The interface control device **910** includes sets of configuration registers **911**. The data stored in the configuration registers **911** establish operating characteristics of the interface control device: in particular, the content of the configuration registers enables the interface control device to present to the host computing device a desired identification of the peripheral device, and determines whether data passing through the peripheral device must be subjected to security operations.

A set of configuration registers is maintained for the host computing device I/O interface, the cryptographic processing device interface, and the target functionality interface. In particular, the content of the host computing device I/O interface configuration registers is such that the interaction of the host computing device with the peripheral device is the same as if the security functionality were not present (unless the data security system is operating in security functionality only mode). The content of the target functionality interface registers reflects the presence of the security functionality. The cryptographic processing device interface registers bridge the gap between the other two sets 45 of registers.

The remainder of the functional blocks of the interface control device **910** shown in FIG. **9**B perform functions and operate in a manner that can readily be understood by those skilled in the art from the designation and interconnection of  $_{50}$  those blocks in FIG. **9**B.

In general, the security functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be configured to perform any cryptographic operation, as well as other, related mathematical operations. A configuration of the 55 security functionality that enables a particular cryptographic or mathematical operation can be produced, for example, by using appropriate existing cryptographic software, application-specific hardware, or combination of the two, as known by those skilled in the art of producing cryptographic 60 devices. Following is a description of exemplary cryptographic and mathematical operations that can be implemented as part of the security functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention. These cryptographic and mathematical operations are well-known and can readily be 65 implemented in a peripheral device according to the invention by a person of skill in the art of cryptography.

For example, a peripheral device according to the invention can implement one or more cryptographic key exchange operations. Any key exchange operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the Department of Defense Standard, the RSA, the Diffie-Hellman, and the X9.42 (ANSI Banking Standard) key exchange algorithms. A peripheral device according to the invention can also

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more hash operations. Any hash operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 180-1 (SHA-1), the Message Digest 2 (RSA), and the Message Digest 5 (RSA) algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more digital signature operations. Any digital signature operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 186 (DSA—512, 1024) and the RSA Signature (512, 768, 1024, 2048) algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more key wrapping operations for both symmetric and asymmetric keys. A key wrapping operation can ensure that plaintext keys are not accessible external to the peripheral device. Any key wrapping operation can be implemented.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more symmetric encryption operations. Any symmetric encryption operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 185 (implemented completely in hardware), the DES (including 3DES, EDE3, CBC and ECB), the RC-2 and the RC-4 algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more asymmetric (public key) encryption operations. While asymmetric encryption operations underlie the key exchange operations described above, asymmetric key operations can also be used independently in a peripheral device according to the invention for bulk encryption. Any asymmetric encryption operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the RSA and Diffie-Hellman algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more exponentiation operations, which are required in many cryptographic operations. Any exponentiation operation can be implemented. Since exponentiation requires a significant amount of processing time relative to other mathematical operations, it can be desirable to implement an exponentiation operation in dedicated hardware. In one embodiment of a peripheral device according to the invention, the security functionality of the peripheral device includes a full 1024 bit exponentiator implemented in hardware.

Various embodiments of the invention have been described. The descriptions are intended to be illustrative, not limitative. Thus, it will be apparent to one skilled in the art that certain modifications may be made to the invention as described above without departing from the scope of the claims set out below.

We claim:

1. A peripheral device, comprising:

- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device;
- means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device; and

means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.

2. A peripheral device as in claim 1, wherein the target 5 means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

3. A peripheral device as in claim 1, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

4. A peripheral device as in claim 1, wherein the target 10 means comprises a biometric device.

5. A peripheral device as in claim 1, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

- 6. A peripheral device, comprising:
- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- means for enabling communication between the security <sup>20</sup> means and the target means,
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device;
- means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device; and
- means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the target means.
- 7. A peripheral device as in claim 6, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.
- 8. A peripheral device as in claim 6, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.
- 9. A peripheral device as in claim 6, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.
- 10. A peripheral device as in claim 6, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

11. A peripheral device, comprising:

- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means; 50
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and
- means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security 55 means.
- 12. A peripheral device as in claim 11, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.13. A peripheral device as in claim 12, wherein the means

13. A peripheral device as in claim 12, wherein the means for non-volatilely storing data further comprises a solid-state 60 disk storage device.

14. A peripheral device as in claim 13, wherein the solid-state disk storage device comprises an ATA format flash disk drive.

**15.** A peripheral device as in claim **11**, wherein the target 65 means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

20

16. A peripheral device as in claim 15, wherein the means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device further comprises wireless communication means.

17. A peripheral device as in claim 16, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless modem.

18. A peripheral device as in claim 16, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless LAN transceiver.

**19**. A peripheral device as in claim **11**, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

20. A peripheral device as in claim 19, wherein the biometric device comprises a fingerprint scanning device.

21. A peripheral device as in claim 19, wherein the biometric device comprises a retinal scanning device.

22. A peripheral device as in claim 11, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

23. A peripheral device, comprising:

- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device;
- means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means; and
- means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the target means.

24. A peripheral device, comprising:

- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and
- means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the target.

25. A peripheral device as in claim 24, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

26. A peripheral device as in claim 25, wherein the means for non-volatilely storing data further comprises a solid-state disk storage device.

27. A peripheral device as in claim 26, wherein the solid-state disk storage device comprises an ATA format flash disk drive.

**28**. A peripheral device as in claim **24**, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

29. A peripheral device as in claim 28, wherein the means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device further comprises wireless communication means.

**30**. A peripheral device as in claim **29**, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless modem.

**31.** A peripheral device as in claim **29**, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless LAN 5 transceiver.

**32**. A peripheral device as in claim **24**, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

33. A peripheral device as in claim 32, wherein the biometric device comprises a fingerprint scanning device. 10

34. A peripheral device as in claim 32, wherein the biometric device comprises a retinal scanning device.

**35**. A peripheral device as in claim **24**, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

36. A data security system, comprising:

- a host computing device including one or more device interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;
   a peripheral device comparising.
- a peripheral device, comprising:
  - security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data; target means for enabling a defined interaction with a
  - target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; and
  - means for enabling communication between the secu-<sup>25</sup> rity means and the target means;
  - means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and
  - means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.
- 37. A data security system, comprising:
- a host computing device including one or more device 35 interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;
- a peripheral device, comprising:
- security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

- target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; and
- means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;
- means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and
- means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the target means.

38. For use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or
 <sup>15</sup> more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the

- steps of: receiving a request from a host computing device for
  - information regarding the type of the peripheral device; and
  - providing to the host computing device, in response to the request, information regarding the type of the defined interaction.

**39**. For use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the steps of:

- communicating with the host computing device to exchange data between the host computing device and the peripheral device;
- performing one or more security operations and the defined interaction on the exchanged data; and
- mediating communication of the exchanged data between the host computing device and the peripheral device so that the exchanged data must first sass through means for performing the one or more security operations.

\* \* \* \* \*

· •		
\$ f	1 ALDOI	H
16/16	ALLOTING DOCKET NO.: SPY-004	
	June 4, 1997	
	Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D. C. 20231 ATTN: BOX PATENT APPLICATION	
	Transmitted herewith for filing is a patent application, as follows:	
	Inventors: William P. Bialick, Mark J. Sutherland, Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson, Thomas K. Rowland, Kirk W. Skeba and Russell D. Housley	
	FIGLOROG with this transmittal latter and	
	<pre>42 pages of specification, claims and abstract 7 sheets of drawings: (Formal) _X (Informal) 3 pages of Declaration and Power of Attorney (Unexecuted)  Power of Attorney  Assignment of invention to Spyrus, Inc.  Small Entity Declaration  Independent Inventor's Declaration  PTO Form-1449  Preliminary amendment</pre>	
	The filing fee is calculated as follows (small entity status is claimed):	٩
- · 	<u>CLAIMS AS FILED (fees computed under §1,9(f))</u>	
r D J	Number Number Filed Extra Rate Fee	
7	Basic Filing Fee: \$ 385.00	
	Total Claims: 32 - 20 = 12 X \$11 = \$ 132.00	
	Independent Claims: 12 - 3 = 9 X \$40 = \$ 360.00	
	Application contains one or more multipledependent claims (\$260 total fee)\$ 0.00	
	TOTAL FILING FEE: \$ 877.00	
	A Return Post Card and this sheet in duplicate are also enclosed. I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as Former Well is an environment of the service as	
	Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C., 20231, on June 4, 1997. Express Mail Receipt No. EF 557 934 406 US David R. Graham Reg. No. 36.150	

# PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY

- 1 ~

William P. Bialick Mark J. Sutherland Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson Thomas K. Rowland Kirk W. Skeba Russell D. Housley

## CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

This application is related to the commonly owned, co-10 pending United States Patent Application entitled "Modular Security Device," by William P. Bialick, Mark J. Sutherland, Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson, Thomas K. Rowland, Kirk W. Skeba and Russell D. Housley, filed on the same date as the present application and having Attorney Docket No. SPY-003, the 15 disclosure of which is incorporated by reference herein.

# BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5

21 693/2

Ketaua safaaa

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to a peripheral, often portable, device (as well as the methods employed by such a peripheral 20 device, and systems including such a peripheral device and a host computing device with which the peripheral device communicates) that can communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the

25 host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device, or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device.
2. Related Art

Computing capability is becoming increasingly portable. 30 In particular, there are more and more portable peripheral devices that are adapted for communication with a host computing device (e.g., desktop computer, notebook computer or personal digital assistant) to enable particular

functionality to be achieved. These portable peripheral devices can take a variety of physical forms (e.g., PCMCIA cards, smart cards, CD-ROMs) and can perform an assortment of functions (e.g., storage, communications and cryptography).

- 2 -

- 5 However, while portable computing affords a number of advantages, it has a significant disadvantage in that the computational environment (including the portable peripheral devices, the host computing devices in which they are used, and any other computational devices that communicate with
- 10 those devices) is more susceptible to security breaches, i.e., unauthorized access to, or modification of, programs and/or data resident within the environment. Consequently, cryptographic devices and methods have been developed for use with such computational environments (as well as other 15 computational environments) to enable increased levels of

environment security to be obtained. FIG. 1 is a block diagram of a prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to,

- and retrieve secured data from, a portable device. In 20 FIG. 1, a system 100 includes a host computing device 101 and a portable device 102. The host computing device 101 and portable device 102 are adapted to enable communication between the devices 101 and 102. The host computing device 101 includes a security mechanism 101a (which can be
- 25 embodied by appropriately configured hardware, software and/or firmware, such as, for example, a general purpose microprocessor operating in accordance with instructions of one or more computer programs stored in a data storage device such as a hard disk) which can be directed to perform one or 30 more cryptographic operations.

In the system 100, if it is desired to provide secured data from the host computing device 101 to the portable device 102, the host computing device 101 causes the security mechanism 101a to perform appropriate cryptographic 35 operations on data before the data is transferred to the

portable device 102. Similarly, the host computing device 101 can receive secured data from the portable device 102 and perform appropriate cryptographic operations on the data to convert the data into a form that enables the 5 data to be accessed and/or modified by a person who is

- 3 -

authorized to do so.

A significant deficiency of the system 100 is that the security mechanism 101a is itself typically not adequately secure. It is commonly accepted that the components

- 10 (including hardware, software and/or firmware) of most host computing devices are inherently insecure. This is because the system design of host computing devices is, typically, intentionally made open so that components made by different manufacturers can work together seamlessly. Thus, an
- 15 unauthorized person may obtain knowledge of the operation of the security mechanism 101a (e.g., identify a cryptographic key), thereby enabling that person to gain access to, and/or modify, the (thought to be secured) data.
- FIG. 2 is a block diagram of another prior art system 20 for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device. In FIG. 2, a system 200 includes a host computing device 201, a portable device 202 and a security device 203. The host computing device 201, the portable device 202 and security
- 25 device 203 are adapted to enable communication between the devices 201 and 202, and between the devices 201 and 203. The security device 203 includes appropriately configured hardware, software and/or firmware which can be directed to perform one or more cryptographic operations.
- 30 In the system 200, if it is desired to provide secured data from the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202, the host computing device 201 first causes data to be transferred to the security device 203, where appropriate cryptographic operations are performed on the 35 data. The secured data is then transferred back to the host

32

//

computing device 201, which, in turn, transfers the secured data to the portable device 202. Similarly, the host computing device 201 can receive secured data from the portable device 202 by, upon receipt of secured data,

- 4 -

5 transferring the secured data to the security device 203, which performs appropriate cryptographic operations on the data to convert the data into a form that enables the data to be accessed and/or modified by a person who is authorized to do so, then transfers the unsecured data back to the host 10 computing device 201.

The system 200 can overcome the problem with the system 100 identified above. The security device 203 can be constructed so that the cryptographic functionality of the device 203 can itself be made secure. (Such a security

15 device is often referred to as a security "token.") An unauthorized person can therefore be prevented (or, at least, significantly deterred) from obtaining knowledge of the operation of the security device 203, thereby preventing (or significantly deterring) that person from gaining access to,

20 and/or modifying, the secured data.

However, the system 200 may still not always ensure adequately secured data. In particular, unsecured data may be provided by the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202 if the host computing device 201 - whether through

- 25 inadvertent error or deliberate attack by a user of the host computing device 201, or through malfunction of the host computing device 201 - fails to first transfer data to the security device 203 for appropriate cryptographic treatment before providing the data to the portable device 202.
- 30 Additionally, the system 200 requires the use of two separate peripheral devices (portable device 202 and security device 203) to enable the host computing device 201 to exchange secured data with the portable device 202. For several reasons, this may be inconvenient. First, both 35 devices 202 and 203 may not be available at the time that it

is desired to perform a secure data exchange (e.g., one may have been forgotten or misplaced). Second, even if both devices 202 and 203 are available, it may not be possible to connect both devices 202 and 203 at the same time to the host 5 computing device 201, making use of the devices 202 and 203 cumbersome and increasing the likelihood that unsecured data is provided by the host computing device 201 to the portable device 202.

- 5 -

# SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

(a

A peripheral device according to the invention can be 10 used to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the 15 peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to the peripheral device 20 from another device). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security

- 25 operations in a single integral device. The defined interactions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification), as described further below. The peripheral device can be implemented so that the
- 30 peripheral device can be operated in any one of multiple user-selectable modes: a security functionality only mode, a target functionality mode, and a combined security and target functionality mode. The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-

line, i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security 5 functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the

- 6 -

host computing device.

A peripheral device according to the invention can advantageously enable application of security operations to a wide variety of interactions with a host computing device.

- 10 In particular, a peripheral device according to the invention can accomplish this without necessity to use two peripheral devices: one that performs the security operations and one that performs the defined interaction. This can, for example, minimize the possibility that the device adapted to
- 15 perform the defined interaction will be used with the host computing system without proper application of security operations to that interaction. Moreover, the provision of in-line security in a peripheral device according to the invention enables a more secure exchange of data between a
- 20 host computing device and the peripheral device, overcoming the problems identified above in previous systems for performing security operations on data exchanged between such devices. Additionally, implementing a modular device according to the invention so that the performance of
- 25 security operations by the modular device is transparent can reduce or eliminate the need to modify aspects of the operation of the host computing device (e.g., device drivers of the host computing device), making implementation and use of a data security system including the modular device
- 30 simpler and easier. Thus, the possibility that a user will use the system incorrectly (e.g., fail to apply security operations to an interaction with the host computing device, or apply the security operations incorrectly or incompletely) is reduced. Making the security operations transparent can 35 also enhance the security of those operations.

35

64090 "SCA60880

(``

# BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG.  $\cancel{1}$  is a block diagram of a prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device.

- 7 -

5 FIG. 2 is a block diagram of another prior art system for enabling a host computing device to provide secured data to, and retrieve secured data from, a portable device.

FIG. 3A is a block diagram of a system according to the invention.  $\swarrow$ 

10 FIG. 3B is a perspective view of a physical implementation of the system of FIG. 3A according to one embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of a peripheral device according to an embodiment of the invention.

15 FIG. 5' is a flow chart of a method, according to an embodiment of the invention, for initiating use of a system according to the invention.

FIG. 6'is a block diagram of a system, according to an embodiment of the invention, illustrating operation of the

20 system during a method according to the invention as in FIG. 5. /

FIG. 7 is a flow chart of a method, according to an embodiment of the invention, for using a peripheral device according to/the invention.

25 FIG. 8'is a block diagram of a peripheral device according to another embodiment of the invention.

FIG. 9Å is a block diagram illustrating the flow of data through the interface control device of FIG. 8.

FIG. 9B is a block diagram of a particular embodiment of 30 an interface control device for use in a peripheral device according to the invention.

# DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

FIG. 3A is a block diagram of a system 300 according to the invention. The system 300 includes a host computing
device 301 and a peripheral device 302 that communicate via a communications interface 303. Herein, "peripheral device" can refer to any device that operates outside of a host omputat ional device and that is connected to the host Computing device. The peripheral device 302 includes a security mechanism 302a that enables security operations (examples of which are described in more detail below) to be performed on data that is stored within the host computing device 301, data that is transmitted from the host computing device 301 to another device, or data that is transmitted 10 device from <del>another</del> device to the host computing device 301. As explained in more detail below, the peripheral device 302 also provides additional functionality (referred to herein as "target functionality") to the system 300, such as, for 15 example, the capability to store data in a solid-state disk storage device, the capability to enable communications from the host computing device 301 to another device, the capability to accept biometric input to enable user authentication to the host computing device 301, and the 20 capability to receive and read a smart card inserted into the peripheral device 302. Generally, the communications interface 303 can be any embodied by any of a variety of communication interfaces, such as a wireless communications interface, a PCMCIA

- 8 -

25 interface, a smart card interface, a serial interface (such as an RS-232 interface), a parallel interface, a SCSI interface or an IDE interface. Each embodiment of the communications interface 303 includes hardware present in each of the host computing device 301 and peripheral device

30 302 that operates in accordance with a communications protocol (which can be embodied, for example, by software stored in a memory device and/or firmware that is present in the host computing device 301 and/or peripheral device 302) appropriate for that type of communications interface, as 35 known to those skilled in the art. Each embodiment of the

Cehogo Sofegaga

a

a

a

a

communications interface 303 also includes mechanisms to enable physical engagement, if any, between the host computing device 301 and peripheral device 302.

- 9 -

- Generally, the security mechanism 302a can be configured 5 to perform any electronic data security operation (herein, referred to simply as "security operation") including, for example, operations that provide one or more of the basic cryptographic functions, such as maintenance of data confidentiality, verification of data integrity, user
- 10 authentication and user non-repudiation. Particular security operations that can be implemented in a peripheral device according to the invention are described in more detail below.

The security mechanism 302a can be, for example, 15 embodied as a security token. Herein, "security token" refers to a device that performs security operations and that includes one or more mechanisms (such as, for example, use of a hardware random number generator and/or protected memory) to provide security for the content of those operations.

- FIG. 3B is a perspective view of a physical implementation of the system 300 of FIG. 3A, according to one embodiment of the invention. In FIG. A, the peripheral device 302 is embodied as a card 312 that can be inserted into a corresponding slot 313 formed in a portable
- 25 computer 311 that, in FIG. 3B, embodies the host computing device 301. Often a peripheral device according to the invention is a portable device, such as the card 312 shown in FIG. 3B. Herein, "portable device" can refer generally to any device that is capable of being easily carried by hand.
- 30 FIG. 4 is a block diagram of a peripheral device 400 according to an embodiment of the invention. The peripheral device 400 includes security functionality 401, target functionality 402 and a host interface 403 that are formed together as part of a single physical device. For example, 35 the security functionality 401 and target functionality 402

38

M

can be enclosed in a single, card-like housing (designated in FIG. 4 by the numeral 404) conforming to a PCMCIA card or smart card standard.

- 10 -

1.19

- The peripheral device 400 can have a number of 5 advantageous characteristics. The peripheral device 400 can be implemented in a manner that enables the security operations of the security functionality 401 to be performed in a manner that is transparent to a host computing device (and, depending upon the particular implementation of the
- 10 peripheral device 400, to a user of a system including the peripheral device 400) of a system according to the invention, so that the host computing device (and, perhaps, user) is aware only of the presence of the target functionality 402. Additionally, the peripheral device 400
- 15 can be implemented so that security operations are performed "in-line," i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the target functionality provided by the peripheral device. Further,
- 20 the peripheral device 400 enables a wide variety of secure target functionality to be easily provided to a host computing device.

FIG. 5 is a flow chart of a method 500, according to an embodiment of the invention, for initiating use of a system

- 25 according to the invention. The method 500 enables an aspect of the invention in which the presence of security functionality as part of a peripheral device is not detected by a host computing device, thus making the security functionality transparent to the host computing device and,
- 30 depending upon the particular manner in which the security functionality is implemented, to a user of the system. FIG. 6 is a block diagram of a system 600, according to an embodiment of the invention, illustrating operation of the system 600 during a method according to the invention such as
- 35 the method 500 of FIG. 5. The system 600 includes a host

zółago, socesgago

computing device 601 and a peripheral device 602. The host computing device 601 includes a display device 603a (e.g., a conventional computer display monitor) and user input device 603b (e.g., a keyboard, mouse, trackball, joystick or

- 11 -

- 5 other appropriate device), referred to collectively hereinafter as user interface device 603. The host computing device 601 also includes, mounted within a housing 604, a processing device 605, a memory device 606, an input/output (I/O) device 607 for enabling communication with the user
- 10 interface device 603, and an input/output (I/O) device 608 for enabling communication with peripheral device 602. The devices 605, 606, 607 and 608 can each be implemented by conventional such devices and can communicate with each other via a conventional computer bus 609, as is well known and
- 15 understood. The peripheral device 602 includes security functionality 611, a memory device 612, an input/output (I/O) device 613 for enabling communication with the host computing device 601 and target functionality 614. The security functionality 611, memory device 612, I/O device 613 and
- 20 target functionality 614 can each be implemented by conventional devices and can communicate with each other via a conventional computer bus 615, as is well known and understood. The host computing device 601 and the peripheral device 602 are shown in simplified form in FIG. 6 to
- 25 facilitate clarity in illustration of this aspect of the invention; as described in more detail below and as understood by those skilled in the art, the host computing device 601 and the peripheral device 602 can - and typically will - include other devices not shown in FIG. 6.
- 30 Returning to FIG. 5, use of a system according to the invention begins when, as shown by step 501, a user of the system connects a peripheral device according to the invention to a host computing device. Such connection can occur in any manner that enables the peripheral device to 35 communicate with the host computing device. Frequently, this

Kehogo sosegaad

will occur as a result of a physical connection of the peripheral device to the host computing device. (In general, such physical connection can occur either before or after the host computing device begins operating; however, in the

- 12 -

- 5 former case, subsequent steps of the method 500 with the exception of, depending upon the implementation of the peripheral device, the step 503 - cannot be performed until the host computing device begins operating.) For example, the peripheral device can be embodied in a card or disk
- 10 (e.g., a card conforming to a PCMCIA form factor as established by the appropriate standard) that is inserted into a corresponding socket formed in the host computing device. Or, the peripheral device can be embodied in a housing from which a cord extends, a plug of the cord being
- 15 inserted into a mating receptacle formed in the host computing device. However, such physical connection need not necessarily occur; the peripheral device can also be connected to the host computing device by any type of wireless communication for which the host computing device 20 contains an appropriate interface.

Once connection between the peripheral device and the host computing device is made, the host computing device detects the presence of the peripheral device, as shown by step 502. Such detection of the presence of a peripheral

- 25 device is typically enabled as a standard aspect of the operating system software of the host computing device. Typically, once the presence of a new peripheral device is detected by the operating system software of the host computing device, the operating system software (or companion
- 30 software program) also identifies the type of the peripheral device. This can be accomplished, for example, by a standard software device driver (hereinafter, "host driver") for devices of the type that use the host computing device interface that is being used by the peripheral device 602.
  35 In FIG. 6, the host driver is shown stored in the memory

cetugo" gonegasso

section 606a of the memory device 606 of the host computing device 601. (The Card Services or Socket Services programs that often are bundled with the Windows95<sup>™</sup> operating system software for use in performing various "housekeeping"

- 13 -

- 5 functions associated with a PCMCIA interface are em examples of such drivers.) However, in the method 500, before the operating system software can perform such identification, the peripheral device according to the invention suspends operation of this aspect of the operating system software, so
- 10 that the peripheral device can establish its identity, as shown by step 503, and explained further below. As will be apparent from that explanation, performance of the step 503 advantageously enables the peripheral device to assume the identity of the target functionality that is part of the
- 15 peripheral device. Since, as described elsewhere herein, a peripheral device according to the invention can include a variety of types of target functionality, the peripheral device can take a variety of identities.

The particular manner in which operation of the

- 20 operating system software is suspended so that the peripheral device can establish its identity can depend on the characteristics of the operating system software and/or the device interface. However, for many combinations of operating system software and device interface, the operating
- 25 system software waits for confirmation that the device connected to the device interface is ready for further interaction with the operating system software before the operating system software seeks to identify the type of the device connected to the interface (the standard for PCMCIA
- 30 interfaces, for example, specifies such operation). In such cases, the peripheral device can be configured to delay informing the operating system software that the peripheral device is ready for further interaction until the peripheral device has established its identity.
- 35

The following description of one way in which the

nl

æ

ores of the second

rehado"

step 503 can be implemented can best be understood by reference to the system 600 shown in FIG. 6. One way in which the operating system software of a host computing device can identify the type of a peripheral device is to

- 14 -

- 5 access a known memory section of a memory device of the peripheral device, as established by an interface standard developed for that type of peripheral device, that stores data representing the type of the peripheral device. This is true for a variety of types of peripheral devices, such as,
- 10 for example, peripheral devices that conform to the PCMCIA standard. (The PCMCIA standard, for example, includes a specification, called the Card Information Structure, that defines, among other things, a location in a portion of memory of a PCMCIA card, denoted as "attribute memory", that
- 15 stores data identifying the type of the PCMCIA card.) In the system 600, the peripheral device 602 is such a device. The memory section of the memory device 612 of the peripheral device 602 which the host computing device 601 seeks to access is shown in FIG. 6 as the memory section 612a, and the
- 20 data stored therein is referred to herein as "peripheral device identification data."

The peripheral device 602 can be implemented so that the peripheral device 602 assumes the identity of the target functionality 614 (whether or not the security functionality

25 of the peripheral device is also being used). This enables the host computing device 601 to interact with the peripheral device 602 as though the peripheral device 602 were a device of the type of the target functionality 614, without recognizing that security functionality 611 is present that

30 may be performing security operations. Thus, the need to modify aspects of the operation of the host computing device (e.g., the host device driver) is reduced or eliminated, making implementation and use of a data security system including the peripheral device 602 simpler and easier.
35 Since use of the data security system is easier (e.g., a user

opac alle georg

need not provide input to cause the host driver to be appropriately tailored to enable desired interaction with a security device), the possibility that a user will use the system incorrectly (e.g., fail to apply security operations

- 15 -

5 to an interaction with the host computing device, or apply the security operations incorrectly or incompletely) is reduced.

Though, as shown in FIG. 6, the peripheral device 602 includes security functionality 611 and target

- 10 functionality 614, the system 600 can be operated so that only the security functionality 611 is used. The peripheral device 602 and peripheral device driver (discussed below) can be implemented so that, when the peripheral device 602 is operated in that way, the peripheral device identification 15 data stored in the memory location 612a identifies the
- peripheral device 602 as a security device.

Returning to FIG. 5, after the peripheral device has established its identity, the host computing device identifies the peripheral device, as shown by step 504. This 20 can be implemented as part of the host driver, as indicated above.

Once the host computing device has identified the peripheral device (and other host computing device operating system software operations concluded, if applicable), the

- 25 user can begin using the peripheral device (in particular, the security functionality of the peripheral device), as shown by step 505 of the method 500. Such use can be enabled by one or more software programs (referred to collectively hereinafter as a "peripheral device driver," though such
- 30 programs can include programs in addition to those conventionally termed "drivers," such as programs conventionally termed "applications") that are executed by the host computing device.
- The use of a separate driver to control and interact 35 with the security functionality of a peripheral device

retued societies

11-

according to the invention can be advantageous because it reduces or eliminates the need to modify the host driver. As a practical matter, such modification of the host driver can likely only be accomplished by requiring a user to interact

- 16 -

AR KOL.

NE BARD

- 5 with a standard host driver to appropriately modify the standard host driver. This is undesirable because the user may forget to modify the driver or modify the driver incorrectly or incompletely.
- The peripheral device driver can have previously been 10 installed on a data storage device (e.g., hard disk) of the host computing device (in FIG. 6, the peripheral device driver is shown stored in the memory section 606b of the memory device 606 of the host computing device 601), or can be made accessible to the host computing device via an
- 15 appropriate interface (such as a floppy disk drive, CD-ROM drive or network connection) at a time when the user wishes to initiate interaction between the host computing device and the peripheral device. Additionally, when a peripheral device according to the invention is used with a host
- 20 computing device which utilizes operating system software that supports the feature colloquially referred to as "plug and play", it is also possible to store the peripheral device driver in a memory device of the peripheral device and configure the peripheral device so that, when the peripheral
- 25 device is connected for the first time to a particular host computing device, the host computing device automatically provides the user with the opportunity to instruct the host computing device to cause the peripheral device driver to be transferred from the peripheral device to the host computing 30 device.

FIG. 7 is a flow chart of a method 700, according to an embodiment of the invention, for using a peripheral device according to the invention. It is to be understood that the method 700 shown in FIG. 7 is not the only way to enable the 35 aspects of use of a peripheral device according to the

6+030'50E69880 . ?

invention that are illustrated in FIG. 7; as can be readily appreciated by those skilled in the art, such aspects can be implemented using any of a variety of other appropriate methods. Further, the use of a peripheral device according

- 17 -

65

- 5 to the invention can include aspects not illustrated in FIG. 7; likewise, such use may not include some of the aspects illustrated in FIG. 7. The method 700 of FIG. 7 is shown merely to aid in the illustration of certain aspects of the invention, and should not be interpreted as restricting
- 10 the manner in which a peripheral device according to the invention can be used.

To begin using a peripheral device according to the invention, a user instructs the host computing device to begin execution of the peripheral device driver, as shown by

- 15 step 701 of the method 700, the user having obtained knowledge of the appropriate command to begin execution of the peripheral device driver in any appropriate manner (e.g., from a user manual accompanying the peripheral device driver and/or the peripheral device). In general, the steps of the
- 20 method 700 occur as a result of operation of a peripheral device driver; however, operation of the host driver may be necessary or desirable to enable some aspects of the method 700 (e.g., execution of a transaction, as in steps 708, 712 and 715).
- 25 As indicated above, a peripheral device according to the invention can be implemented so that the host driver cannot detect the presence of the security functionality of the peripheral device. In such case, the peripheral device driver enables the detection of the security functionality,
- 30 as shown by step 702 of the method 700. This can be • accomplished by including instructions as part of the peripheral device driver that, when the peripheral device driver first begins executing, cause the peripheral device driver to access a predefined location of a memory device of 35 the peripheral device (in FIG. 6, the memory section 612b)

chouc'

for data that identifies whether the peripheral device is a device having security functionality that is compatible with the peripheral device driver. If the peripheral device is such a device, then the peripheral device driver can enable

- 18 -

- 5 the user to make use of the security functionality of the peripheral device. Further, the peripheral device driver can be implemented, as shown in FIG. 7, so that, if the proper security functionality is not detected, execution of the peripheral device driver terminates, preventing use of the
- 10 peripheral device. Alternatively, the peripheral device driver can be implemented so that, if the proper security functionality is not detected, the target functionality of the peripheral device can be used without the security functionality of the peripheral device.
- 15 A peripheral device according to the invention can, in general, be operated in one of three modes: 1) a mode in which only the security functionality is used, 2) a mode in which both the security functionality and the target functionality are used, and 3) a mode in which only the
- 20 target functionality is used. The user can be enabled to, via the peripheral device driver, select any one of the three modes of operation. However, in some applications, it may be desirable to inhibit operation in one or two of the modes. In particular, it may be desirable to prevent operation of
- 25 the peripheral device in the last of the above-listed modes, i.e., a mode in which the security functionality is not used, if it is desired to ensure that use of the target functionality can only occur with the application of one or more security operations. This could be accomplished by
- 30 implementing the peripheral device driver so that the option to operate in that mode is not presented to the user, or the peripheral device could be configured during manufacture to prohibit operation in that mode. For example, if the target functionality is embodied as a communications device or a 35 memory device, it may be desirable to ensure that unencrypted

ordens grenderv

iO

data cannot be transferred via the communications device or stored in the memory device, whether done inadvertently or on purpose.

- 19 -

- In the method 700, all three of the above-listed modes 5 are available for use. In the step 703 of the method 700, a determination is made as to whether the security functionality is to be used. (As noted above, such use may be required.) If yes, the peripheral device is operated in one of the first two modes above (security functionality
- 10 only, or security functionality plus peripheral functionality); if no, the third mode is used (peripheral functionality only).

The peripheral device driver can be implemented so that the user must successfully enter an acceptable access code

- 15 (e.g., a password or PIN) before the user is enabled to use the peripheral device. In particular, it can be desirable to require an access code before enabling a user to use the security functionality, thus establishing a layer of security that protects the integrity of the security operations
- 20 themselves. In the method 700, as shown by the step 704, an acceptable access code must be entered by the user before the security functionality of the peripheral device can be used. An access code can be entered, for example, by inputting the access code in a conventional manner using a user interface
- 25 device (e.g., keyboard) of the host computing device. Or, an access code can be entered using particular embodiments of target functionality (such as a biometric device, discussed in more detail below) that is part of the peripheral device according to the invention.
- 30 Advantageously, an access code can be used not only to control access to the security (or other) functionality of the peripheral device, but also to identify a "personality" of the user. Each personality is represented by data that establishes certain characteristics of operation of the

35 peripheral device, such as, for example, restrictions on

at a spart of the second s

operation of the peripheral device (e.g., limitations on the types of security operations that can be performed) or specification of operating parameters or characteristics (e.g., cryptographic keys or specification of a particular

- 20 -

- 5 incarnation of a type of security algorithm, such as a particular encryption algorithm). A single user can have multiple personalities: each personality might, for example, correspond to a different capacity in which a user acts. Data representing personalities and corresponding user access 10 codes can be stored in a memory device of the peripheral
  - device.

Upon receipt of an acceptable access code, the peripheral device driver controls the host computing device to present a user interface that enables the user to effect 15 desired control of the peripheral device, and, in particular, to use the peripheral device to perform security operations, as described below. (If access codes are also used to identify personalities, upon receipt of an acceptable access code, the peripheral device driver can also access and

- 20 retrieve the data representing the corresponding personality; so that the operation of the peripheral device can be controlled accordingly.) The user interface for enabling a user to operate the peripheral device can be implemented in any of a variety of well known ways (e.g., as a graphical
- 25 user interface) using methods and apparatus that are well known to those skilled in the art. Generally, the user interface enables the user to perform any functionality that is provided by the peripheral device, as described in more detail elsewhere herein.
- 30 As indicated above, a peripheral device according to the invention can be implemented in any of three modes. Once an acceptable access code has been entered, the peripheral device driver can enable the user to select one of the three modes, as shown in step 705 of the method 700.

35 (Alternatively, as mentioned above, it may be desirable to

49

a

rehoon"

present the user only with the option of choosing the security functionality only mode or the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, so as to eliminate the possibility that the user will effect an

- 21 -

- 5 unsecured use of the target functionality.) If the security functionality only mode, or the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, is selected, then the user interface (and the underlying peripheral device driver) enables the user to input all desired or required
- 10 instructions regarding the security operations to be performed for a particular "transaction" (e.g., a storage of data in a memory device, a transmission of data by a communications device, or an exchange of data with a smart card reader device), as shown by steps 706 and 710 of the
- 15 method 700. For example, the user interface can enable the user to select data to which security operations are to be performed, specify the application of particular security operations to data, or specify parameters or other information required for a particular security operation. If
- 20 the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode, or the peripheral functionality only mode, is selected, then the user interface and peripheral device driver enable the user to input all desired or required instructions regarding use of the target functionality for the
- 25 transaction, as shown by steps 707 and 711 of the method 700. For example, if the target functionality is embodied as a memory device, the user interface can enable the user to specify a name for the stored data. Or, for example, if the target functionality is embodied as a communications device,
- 30 the user interface can enable the user to specify a destination (e.g., an electronic mail address) for the data. Once the user has provided instructions in steps 706 and 707, in step 710, or in step 711, the transaction is executed, as shown by step 708 or step 712 of the method 700.
  35 After execution of the transaction, the user can be allowed

to execute further transactions, as shown by step 709 of the method 700. It is also possible for the user to begin using another personality (by entering an appropriate access code), as shown by step 709 of the method 700. Eventually, use of the peripheral device ends as shown by step 718 of the

- 22 -

5 the peripheral device ends, as shown by step 718 of the method 700.

The peripheral device and associated peripheral device driver can be implemented so that it is possible to use only the security functionality of the peripheral device. This 10 peripheral device can be used in this manner to, for example, encrypt or decrypt data stored on the host computing device by receiving the data from the host computing device, encrypting or decrypting the data as appropriate, then returning the encrypted or decrypted data to the host 15 computing device.

As indicated above, the peripheral device and associated peripheral device driver can be implemented so that it is possible to use only the peripheral functionality of the peripheral device, even without entering an appropriate 20 access code. In the method 700, such operation is shown by the steps 714, 715 and 716, which function in the same manner as steps 711, 712 and 709, described above. Using the peripheral device in this way can be useful, for example,

when the target functionality is embodied as a biometric 25 device, as described further below, that is used to perform user authentication. In particular, if the biometric device is to be used as the mechanism to enter the access code in step 704, operation in this mode may be necessary (depending on the capabilities of the biometric device) to enable such 30 use of the biometric device. The step 717 can also enable use of the security functionality to begin by causing a prompt for an appropriate access code to appear (step 704). Again, eventually, use of the peripheral device ends (step 718).

a

"Dentado"

35

As described above, a peripheral device according to the

invention that includes security functionality and target functionality can be implemented so that the host computing device is not aware of the presence of the security functionality. It may also be desirable to shield the user

- 23 -

- 5 from knowledge of the presence of the security functionality and cause predetermined security operations to be performed automatically. This may be desirable so that, for example, it is not necessary for the user to provide input regarding the performance of security operations, thus eliminating the
- 10 possibility that the user will neglect to provide such input, or will provide the input incorrectly or incompletely. Or, it may be desirable to make security operations transparent to users to enhance the security of those operations, since, if the performance of such operations is unknown, there will
- 15 be no attempt to defeat the security provided by those operations. If such is the case, the peripheral device driver can be implemented so that the peripheral device can operate only in the security functionality plus peripheral functionality mode (steps 710, 711, 712, 714, 715, 716
- 20 and 717 of the method 700 cannot be performed) and so that no indication (e.g., presentation of a user interface display that allows input of instructions regarding the performance of security operations, as in step 706 of the method 700) is given of the presence of the security functionality of the
- 25 peripheral device. Rather, the user would simply be presented with options regarding operation of the target functionality (step 707 of the method 700). In such an implementation, the peripheral device driver can be implemented to automatically cause one or more predetermined
- 30 security operations to be performed based upon a userspecified interaction with the target functionality, or the peripheral device can be configured to cause such security operations to be performed any time a specified interaction with the target functionality occurs.

-11

35

DEBEGIOS . DEPAS

A significant advantage of a peripheral device according

to the invention is that the peripheral device can be implemented so that any of a variety of types of target functionality can be included as part of the peripheral device. In particular, as described in more detail below,

- 24 -

- 5 the peripheral device includes an interface control device which enables and manages communications between and among the host computing device, a cryptographic processing device that is part of the peripheral device, and target functionality that is also part of the peripheral device.
- 10 The interface control device can be adapted to provide an appropriate interface for each type of target functionality. Thus, in general, any desired target functionality can be used with a peripheral device according to the invention, so long as the target functionality is implemented so as to
- 15 enable communication with an interface of the type presented. Those skilled in the art of data communications can readily understand how to implement such communication with target functionality in view of the detailed description below of an embodiment of a peripheral device according to the invention, 20 and, in particular, an interface control device of such a

peripheral device.

For example, target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be embodied as a memory device adapted to enable non-volatile storage of data. In general,

- 25 any such memory device can be used to embody such target functionality. More particularly, a solid-state disk storage device (e.g., NAN flash memory device) can advantageously be used. Illustratively, a memory device that can be used to embody target functionality in a peripheral device according
- 30 to the invention can be a compact flash memory device, such as an ATA format flash disk drive. Other solid-state disk storage devices, such as SCSI disks and IDE disks can be used. The construction and operation of memory devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is 35 well understood by those skilled in that art, so that,

together with an understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface control device, a memory device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. A peripheral device

- 25 -

- 5 according to the invention that includes a memory device that embodies the target functionality can be used, for example, to securely store data in a manner that enables a user of the data to easily carry the data with them wherever they go. Target functionality of a peripheral device according to
- 10 the invention can also be embodied as a communications device adapted to enable communication between the host computing device and a remote device. In general, any such communications device can be used to embody target functionality. A communications device that can be used to
- 15 embody target functionality in a peripheral device according to the invention can include, for example, a data communications modem (such as, for example, a conventional telephone line modem, an ISDN modem, a cable modem, or a wireless modem) or a LAN transceiver (either wired or
- 20 wireless and, in the latter case, operating in, for example, the infrared or radiofrequency spectrum). The construction and operation of communication devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is well understood by those skilled in that art, so that, together with an
- 25 understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface control device, a communication device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a communications
- 30 device that embodies target functionality can be used, for example, to encrypt electronic mail before transmission to an addressee. Or, such a peripheral device can be used, for example, to encrypt data files that a person wishes to securely transfer between a computing device at the person's 35 place of work and a computing device at the person's home.

ketogo"sof69880

Target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can also be embodied as a biometric device, which is defined herein as any device that is adapted to receive input data regarding a physical characteristic of a

- 26 -

5 person based upon a physical interaction of the person with the device. In general, any such biometric device can be used to embody target functionality. Biometric devices that can be used in a peripheral device according to the invention can include, for example, a fingerprint scanning device, a 10 retinal scanning device or a faceprint scanning device.

In addition to conventional computational devices for storing and/or manipulating digital data, a biometric device includes a sensor for sensing the physical characteristic, and an analog-to-digital converter to transform the analog

- 15 data representing the sensed characteristic into digital data. For example, a fingerprint scanning device includes a sensor upon which a person can place a finger, the sensor sensing the fingerprint of the finger, the content of the sensed fingerprint being converted into digital data by the
- 20 device. Similarly, a retinal scanning device includes a sensor which can be placed proximate to a person's eye, the sensor sensing characteristics of the eye such as blood vessel pattern or iris pattern, the device translating the content of the sensed characteristics into digital data. The
- 25 construction and operation of biometric devices in general, as well as those identified particularly above, is well understood by those skilled in that art, so that, together with an understanding of the required communication capability between the target functionality and the interface
- 30 control device, a biometric device for use with the invention can be easily constructed and operated. Fingerprint scanning devices and retinal scanning devices that can readily be modified for use with the invention, i.e. to communicate with an interface control device according to the invention, are 35 known to those skilled in that art. For example, fingerprint

6,110

55

kshogo" sofegaese

scanning devices such as those available from Identix Incorporated of Sunnyvale, California can be used in a fingerprint scanning device for use with the invention. A peripheral device according to the invention that

- 27 -

- 5 includes a biometric device that embodies the target functionality can be used, for example, to enable user authentication to a host computing device before allowing access to particular data stored on the host computing device. Such user authentication can be accomplished by
- 10 using a biometric device to obtain biometric data from a user and comparing the biometric data to an appropriate library of biometric data representing a predetermined group of people (e.g., authorized users). The library of data can be stored in a memory device of the peripheral device.
- 15 When a peripheral device including a fingerprint scanning device is embodied as a card adapted to be inserted into a slot of a host computing device (e.g., a slot conforming to a PCMCIA standard), it may be useful to make the peripheral device relatively long, so that a portion of
- 20 the card on which the sensor is positioned can extend from the slot of the host computing device, thereby enabling fingerprints to be scanned while the peripheral device is inserted in the host computing device. Similarly, for a fingerprint scanning device, retinal scanning device or
- 25 faceprint scanning device, it may be desirable to form the device so that the sensor is connected to the remainder of the device via an appropriate communication line, thus providing some range of movement of the sensor while the peripheral device is inserted in the host computing device, 30 thereby facilitating use of the device.

A biometric device can be used in different ways with a system according to the invention, depending upon the capabilities of the biometric device. Using known apparatus and methods, a "smart" biometric device can be implemented 35 with the capability to detect the presence of an input to the

retogo" socessos

10

sensor, and, upon such detection, initiate acquisition of the biometric data and performance by the peripheral device of the appropriate data comparison. Such a biometric device can be used to perform user authentication as in step 704 of the 5 method 700 above. Alternatively, the biometric device may be

- 28 -

- "stupid" and require that a user initiate the data acquisition and authentication process. Such a biometric device can be used to perform user authentication in a peripheral device that allows operation without entry of a 10 proper access code, as in steps 714 and 715 of the
  - method 700.

Target functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be also embodied as a smart card reader device adapted to communicate with a smart card, such as, for 15 example, a smart card compliant with the ISO 7816 standard. Such a device can be implemented by adapting a conventional smart card reader, the construction and operation of which is well known to those skilled in that art, with a

communications interface that enables the smart card reader 20 to communicate with the interface control device. A peripheral device according to the invention that includes a smart card reader device can be used to provide security features to a smart card reader, or add to existing security features of a smart card reader.

It is to be understood that the examples given above are merely illustrative, not exhaustive, of the ways in which a peripheral device according to the invention can be used. Many more possibilities exist.

FIG. 8 is a block diagram of a peripheral device 800 30 according to another embodiment of the invention. The peripheral device 800 includes a cryptographic processing device 801, an interface control device 802, a first memory device 803, a second memory device 804, a real-time clock 805, a host computing device input/output (I/O)

35 interface 806 and target functionality 807.

1641090 50669880 80869880

The host computing device I/O interface 806 enables communications between the peripheral device 800 and a host computing device. The electrical and mechanical characteristics of the I/O interface 806, as well as the

- 29 -

8. S

5 protocol used to enable communication via the interface 806, are established in any manner that conforms to the industry standard specifications for an interface of that type. For example, a peripheral device according to the invention can be adapted for insertion into a PCMCIA slot of a host

10 computing device. In such a peripheral device, the electrical and mechanical characteristics and communications protocol for the host computing device I/O interface 806 are established in conformance with the appropriate PCMCIA standards.

15 The cryptographic processing device 801 can be adapted to perform security operations. Generally, the cryptographic processing device 801 can be embodied by any processor capable of performing the cryptographic operations desired to be provided by the peripheral device 800. In one embodiment

- 20 of the peripheral device 800, the cryptographic processing device 801 is a special purpose embedded processor, embodied on a single integrated chip and designated as MYK-82 (and also referred to by the name Capstone), which includes an ARM6<sup>™</sup> processor core and several special purpose
- 25 cryptographic processing elements that have been developed by the Department of Defense. The construction and operation of the Capstone chip is known by those skilled in the art of cryptographic processing.

The first memory device 803 can be a non-volatile data 30 storage device which can be used to store computer programs and persistent data. The first memory device 803 can be implemented by any appropriate such device (of which there are many conventional, readily available incarnations), such as, for example, a conventional flash memory device.

35

The second memory device 804 can be a volatile data

a

Zetogo"

storage device that can also be a rapidly accessible data storage device in which frequently used data and program instructions can be stored during operation of the peripheral device 800. The second memory device 804 can also be implemented by any appropriate such device (of which there

- 30 -

5 implemented by any appropriate such device (of which there are many conventional, readily available embodiments), such as, for example, a conventional random access memory (RAM) device.

The real-time clock 805 enables the creation of time 10 stamps, which can be used in a number of security operations. Advantageously, the time stamps created by the real-time clock 805 are more secure than those that could otherwise be produced by the relatively insecure clock of a host computing device. The real-time clock 805 includes a conventional

- 15 battery backup device that maintains power to the real-time clock 805 when the peripheral device 800 is not in use (i.e., when power is not supplied to the peripheral device 800), so that the correct time is continuously preserved within the peripheral device 800. The real-time clock 805 (including
- 20 battery backup) can be embodied by any conventional such device, such as the DS1302 clock available from Dallas Semiconductor of Dallas, Texas.

In the peripheral device 800, the interface control device 802 mediates the interaction between the host

- 25 computing device, the target functionality 807 and the cryptographic processing device 801. In one embodiment of the peripheral device 800, the interface control device 802 is a conventional field-programmable gate array (FPGA) that is programmed to perform the functions that it is desired to
- 30 implement with the interface control device 802, as described in more detail below. The interface control device 802, under control of the cryptographic processing device 801, can be adapted to enable the peripheral device 800 to assume the identity of the target functionality 807, as discussed above.

cryptography aspect of the invention, since the interface control device 802 controls the flow of data between the host computing device and the target functionality 807.

- 31 -

1 106

- FIG. 9A is a block diagram illustrating the flow of data 5 through the interface control device 802 of FIG. 8. Data transferred from a host computing device enters the peripheral device 800 (not demarcated in FIG. 9A) through the host computing device I/O interface 806. The interface control device 802 presents the data to a cryptographic
- 10 processing device interface 808 (not shown in FIG. 8). Depending on the configuration of the interface control device 802, as determined by operation of the peripheral device driver and/or by settings established during the manufacture of the peripheral device 800, the data may or may
- 15 not be processed by the cryptographic processing device 801 (FIG. 8). Typically (or, in some cases, necessarily), as discussed in more detail above, cryptographic processing will occur. The interface control device 802 then causes the data to be transferred to the target functionality 807. Data
- 20 being transferred from the target functionality 807 to the host computing device follows a similar path in the reverse direction. When the target functionality 807 is not present or is not being used, data transferred from the host computing device, after being presented to the cryptographic
- 25 processing device interface 808 and being processed by the cryptographic processing device 801, is caused to be transferred back to the host computing device I/O interface 806 (and, from there, to the host computing device) by the interface control device 802.
- 30 FIG. 9B is a block diagram of a particular embodiment of an interface control device 910 for use in a peripheral device according to the invention. As shown in FIG. 9B, the host computing device communicates via a PCMCIA interface and the target functionality is embodied by a compact flash 35 memory device. Those skilled in the art will readily

cotogo samogago

appreciate how the interface control device 910 can be modified for use with other host computing device interfaces and/or target functionalities.

- 32 -

V. 0. 469 0.

The interface control device 910 includes sets of 5 configuration registers 911. The data stored in the configuration registers 911 establish operating characteristics of the interface control device: in particular, the content of the configuration registers enables the interface control device to present to the host

10 computing device a desired identification of the peripheral device, and determines whether data passing through the peripheral device must be subjected to security operations.

A set of configuration registers is maintained for the host computing device I/O interface, the cryptographic

- 15 processing device interface, and the target functionality interface. In particular, the content of the host computing device I/O interface configuration registers is such that the interaction of the host computing device with the peripheral device is the same as if the security functionality were not
- 20 present (unless the data security system is operating in security functionality only mode). The content of the target functionality interface registers reflects the presence of the security functionality. The cryptographic processing device interface registers bridge the gap between the other 25 two sets of registers.

The remainder of the functional blocks of the interface control device 910 shown in FIG. 9B perform functions and operate in a manner that can readily be understood by those skilled in the art from the designation and interconnection 30 of those blocks in FIG. 9B.

- In general, the security functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention can be configured to perform any cryptographic operation, as well as other, related mathematical operations. A configuration of the
- 35 security functionality that enables a particular

cryptographic or mathematical operation can be produced, for example, by using appropriate existing cryptographic software, application-specific hardware, or combination of the two, as known by those skilled in the art of producing

- 33 -

5 cryptographic devices. Following is a description of exemplary cryptographic and mathematical operations that can be implemented as part of security functionality of a peripheral device according to the invention. These cryptographic and mathematical operations are well-known and 10 can readily be implemented in a peripheral device according

to the invention by a person of skill in the art of cryptography.

For example, a peripheral device according to the invention can implement one or more cryptographic key

15 exchange operations. Any key exchange operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the Department of Defense Standard, the RSA, the Diffie-Hellman, and the X9.42 (ANSI Banking Standard) key exchange algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also 20 implement one or more hash operations. Any hash operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 180-1 (SHA-1), the Message Digest 2 (RSA), and the Message Digest 5 (RSA) algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also 25 implement one or more digital signature operations. Any digital signature operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 186 (DSA - 512, 1024) and the RSA Signature (512, 768, 1024, 2048) algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also 30 implement one or more key wrapping operations for both symmetric and asymmetric keys. A key wrapping operation can ensure that plaintext keys are not accessible external to the peripheral device. Any key wrapping operation can be implemented.

o

35

A peripheral device according to the invention can also

implement one or more symmetric encryption operations. Any symmetric encryption operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the FIPS 185 (implemented completely in hardware), the DES (including 3DES, EDE3, CBC and ECB), the 5 RC-2 and the RC-4 algorithms.

- 34 -

A peripheral device according to the invention can also implement one or more asymmetric (public key) encryption operations. While asymmetric encryption operations underlie the key exchange operations described above, asymmetric key

10 operations can also be used independently in a peripheral device according to the invention for bulk encryption. Any asymmetric encryption operation can be implemented, such as, for example, the RSA and Diffie-Hellman algorithms.

A peripheral device according to the invention can also 15 implement one or more exponentiation operations, which are required in many cryptographic operations. Any exponentiation operation can be implemented. Since peripheral exponentiation requires a significant amount of processing time relative to other mathematical operations, it

- 20 can be desirable to implement an exponentiation operation in dedicated hardware. In one embodiment of a peripheral device according to the invention, the security functionality of the peripheral device includes a full 1024 bit exponentiator implemented in hardware.
- 25 Various embodiments of the invention have been described. The descriptions are intended to be illustrative, not limitative. Thus, it will be apparent to one skilled in the art that certain modifications may be made to the invention as described above without departing from the scope 30 of the claims set out below.

63

/64030°50669880 8 We claim:

1. A peripheral device, comprising:

is a subscription of

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

- 35 -

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device.

2. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

3. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

Daecement. Decorem

5

10

20 4. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

5. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

6. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, further comprising means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.

7. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, further

comprising means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling 5 a defined interaction with a host computing device.

- 36 -

β. A peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.

A peripheral device as in Claim %, wherein the
20 target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

10. A peripheral device as in Claim 9, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

19 1/1. A peripheral device as in Claim Ø, wherein the 25 target means comprises a biometric device.

 $\frac{1}{12}$ . A peripheral device as in Claim  $\mathcal{S}$ , wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

13. A peripheral device as in Claim 8, further

65

10

comprising means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling 5 a defined interaction with a host computing device.

- 37 -

14. A peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device.

24 35. A peripheral device as in Claim 14, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

28 28 29 20 20 20 20 25 between the host computing device and a remote device.

37. A peripheral device as in Claim 14, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

35. A peripheral device as in Claim 14, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart 30 card.

zetogo" serese

10

15

20

19. A peripheral device, comprising: security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

- 38 -

a solid-state disk storage device for storing data; means for enabling communication between the security means and the solfid-state disk storage device; and

means for enabling communication with a host computing device.

5

15

20

30

20. A peripheral device as in Claim 1, wherein the solid-state disk storage device comprises an ATA format flash disk drive.

21. A peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

means for wirelessly communicating with a remote
device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the wireless communication means; and means for enabling communication with a host computing device.

22. A peripheral device as in Claim 21, wherein the vireless communication means comprises a wireless modem.

23. A peripheral device as in Claim 21, wherein the 25 wireless communication means comprises a wireless LAN transceiver.

24. A peripheral device, comprising: security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data; a biometric device for receiving input data regarding a physical characteristic of a person based upon a physical interaction of the person with the peripheral device;

39

means for enabling communication between the security means and the biometric device; and means for enabling communication with a host computing device.

25. A peripheral device as in Claim 24, wherein the iometric device comprises a fingerprint scanning device.

26. A peripheral device as in Claim 24, wherein the biometric device comprises a retinal scanning device.

27. A peripheral device, comprising: security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

means for communicating with a smart card; means for enabling communication between the security means and the smart card communication means; and

means for enabling communication with a host computing device.

28. A data security system, comprising: a host computing device including one or more device interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;

25

30

5

10

15

20

a peripheral device comprising: security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data; target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

étango" socégeso

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device.

. A data security system, comprising:

- 40 -

a host computing device including one or more device interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;

a peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; and means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.

A data security system, comprising:

a host computing device including one or more device interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;

a peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data; target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; and means for enabling communication between the

cetoo socoaso

5

1.0

15

20

30

security means and the target means; means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

- 41 -

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device.

10 X. For use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the steps of:

> receiving a request from a host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device; and

providing to the host computing device, in response to the request, information regarding the type of the defined interaction.

32. For use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising 25 the steps of:

70

receiving an instruction from a host computing device regarding operation of the peripheral device; and performing security operations and/or the defined interaction in response to the instruction from the host computing device.

add A"

cehogo soceaso

5

15

20

PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY William P. Bialick Mark J. Sutherland Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson Thomas K. Rowland Kirk W. Skeba Russell D. Housley

- 42 -

## ABSTRACT

5

0

a

The invention enables a peripheral device to communicate 10 with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or 15 transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device, or transmitted to the peripheral device from another device. Τn particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, 20 in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral The defined interactions can provide a variety of device.

- 25 types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification)/ as described further below. The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performed between
- 30 the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device.

5 100 Host Portable Computing Device Device Security 101 102 101a FIG. 1 (Prior Art) Zehogo " soesaag £ 200 'Security Device Host Computing Device <u>203</u> Portable Device 201 202 FIG. 2 (Prior Art)  $(\mu)$


Host Security Target Interface Functionality HOI 402 403 404 404

FIG, 4







Host Cryptographic L Interface 1 Processing Pevice ł I Interface 808 806 ļ 1 ł Target Eunctionality Interface 802 807 FIG, 9A Zehoge Soecseec HOY/85Y RDY/BSY REGISTER CRYPTO COMMAND DETECTOR Compact Flash Sector Cntr Γ PCMCZA 1/0 CNTLR PEMOHA I/O CONTROL PROCEMOOR ADDRESS DATA ADDR BUFFER HNTERFA STATE LOCAL CONTROL OUT EN HALBARAOR LIICAL DATA Pcheth Datas Buffer 16 ICL ADDRESS CARD ENABLE Compact Flash COMPACT FLASH DATA BUFFER ł CONFIG REGISTERS COMPACT FLASH INTERFACE ξ FIG, 9B 911 910

78

a A A

to the second se

DECLARATION AN OWER OF ATTORNEY FOR PATH APPLICATION

ika sak

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below adjacent to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of subject matter (process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or an improvement thereof) which is claimed and for which a patent is sought by way of the application entitled: <u>Peripheral</u> <u>Device With Integrated Security Functionality</u>

which (check) [X] is attached hereto. and is amended by the Preliminary Amendment attached [] hereto. was filed on \_ [] as Application Serial No. f ] and was amended on (if applicable). I hereby state that I have reviewed and understood the contents of the above-identified application, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above. C acknowledge the duty to disclose to the United States Patent and Trademark Office information known to me to be material to the examination fof this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a). ليزا I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, In \$ 119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate isted below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate for the same invention having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed: Prior Foreign Application(s) Priority Claimed ഫ് N/A Yes No 🔨 (Number) (Country) (Date Filed) Yes NO (Number) (Country) (Date Filed) I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, \$\$ 119 and 365(a) of any international patent application(s), listed below, that do not designate the United States, but do designate at least one country other than the United States, and have also identified below any such international application for the same invention having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed: Prior International Application(s) Priority Claimed N/A Yes No (Number) (Date Filed) Yes No

(Number)

1

(Date Filed)

I hereby claim the prior benefit under Title 35, ited States Code, § 119(e) of the United States provisional patent app\_\_tcation(s) listed below and, insofar as any subject matter of the claims of this application is not disclosed in such prior United States provisional application(s) in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which became available between the filing date of the prior provisional application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

N/A					
(Appl.	Ser. No.)	(Date Filed)	(Status-paten	ted, per	ding, abandoned)
(Appl.	Ser. No.)	(Date Filed)	(Status-paten	ted, per	ding, abandoned)
I herek § 120 c as any such pi paragra disclos Regulat the pr: Of this 0 <u>N/A</u>	by claim the of the Unite subject mat rior United aph of Title se material tions, § 1.5 ior applicat s applicatio	e priority benefit used States patent app ter of the claims of States application a 35, United States information as defined b6(a) which became a tion(s) and the nation:	inder Title 35, plication(s) li of this applica (s) in the mann Code, § 112, I Ined in Title 3 available betwe Ional or PCT in	United sted bel tion is er provi acknowl 7, Code en the i ternatio	States Code, ow and, insofar not disclosed in ded by the first edge the duty to of Federal filing date of onal filing date
u:(App⊥. WD Lui	Ser. NO.)	(Date Filed)	(Status-paten	ilea, per	ding, abandoned)
(Appl.	Ser. No.)	(Date Filed)	(Status-pater	ited, per	nding, abandoned)
I here I here I here I hat do I hat do I here I	by claim the and 365(c) esignate the ational app that of the r as any sub sed in such first parag ledge the du de of Federa ling date of internation	e priority benefit a of any internationa e United States and lication for the same application(s) on oject matter of the prior international graph of Title 35, a uty to disclose mate al Regulations, § 1 f the prior international f the prior international	ander Title 35, al patent appli have also iden me invention ha which priority claims of this l application(s Jnited States C erial informati .56(a) which be tional application	United cation(s atified h ving a s is class application code, § con as do came available con (s) a on:	States Code, s), listed below, below any such filing date imed, and, ation is not manner provided 112, I efined in Title ailable between and the national
Prior	Internation	al Application(s)		Priorit	Y Claimed
N/A			· .	Yes	No
	<u> </u>	(Date Filed)		Yes	No
(Numbe	r)	(Date Filed)	• • • • • •		

I hereby appoint the fol ing attorney, with full, is of substitution, to prosecute this application and to transact all burness in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: David R. Graham, Reg. No. 36,150.

Please address all correspondence regarding this application to David R. Graham, 1337 Chewpon Avenue, Milpitas, California 95035.

Please direct all telephone calls regarding this application to David R. Graham at telephone number (408) 945-9912.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made herein on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Title 18, United States Code, § 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor William P. Bialick	
Residence <u>Clarksville, Maryland</u>	Citizenship US
Post Office Address <u>7150 Moorland Drive</u>	
Clarksville, Maryland 2102	9-1735
Ω	
ØInventor's signature	Date
JFull name of inventor Mark J. Sutherland	
Residence Milpitas, California	Citizenship US
Post Office Address 1209 Eagle Ridge Way	
Milpitas, Califonia 95035-	7817
<u> </u>	
e	
filnventor's signature	Date
mFull name of inventor Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson	Date
Residence Belvedere, California	Citizenshin US
Post Office Address 296 Beach Road	
Belvedere, California 9492	0-2472
Inventor's signature	Dato
Full name of inventor Thomas K Rowland	
Residence Los Gatos, California	Citizenshin US
Post Office Address P.O. Box 33157	
Los Gatos, California 950	31-3157
Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor Kirk W. Skeba	
Residence Fremont, Califonia	Citizenship US
Post Office Address 400 Calistoga Circle	
Fremont, California 94536-	7620
$\{1, 1, \dots, n\} = \{1, 1, \dots, n\}$	
Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor Russell D. Housley	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Residence <u>Herndon, Virginia</u>	Citizenship US
Post Office Address 918 Spring Knoll Drive	
tobe office Address <u>- 510 Sprind Knott</u> Diffe	

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE William P. Bialick et al. ts: ÷., Spyrus, Inc. e ' 1 . Peripheral Device With Integrated Security A Functionality Serial No.: Filed: June 4, 1997 08/869,305 Examiner: Unknown Group Art Unit: Unknown Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004 -------------

Milpitas, California August 11, 1997

0260-

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D. C. 20231

## INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, § 1.97 and § 1.98, Applicants bring the documents (copy of the U.S. Patent enclosed) listed on the enclosed Form PTO-1449 to the Examiner's attention in the above-identified application. Citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the documents are necessarily prior art with respect to the instant invention. Also, citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the information disclosed therein is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b).

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>August 11, 1997</u>. <u>8-11-97</u> Date

Respectfully submitted, and K. Eraham David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

- 1 -

		·			par	totte		
U.S.	DEPT OF COMMERCE	E - PATENT AND	RADEMARK OFFICE	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	.: SPY-004	SERIAL NO	.: 08/86	-1_0F 9.305
	INFORMATION	I DISCLOSURE CI	TATION	APPLICANTS: Willia	am P. Bialick	et al.		
	ROM	sheets if nec	essary)	FILING DATE: June	4, 1997	GROUP ART	UNIT: U	inknown
	F ANG		U.S. PA	TENTS				
EXAMINER 7	PATE	ISSUE DATE	INVENTOR(S)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	DATE
full_	SEMMENTS !!!	8/13/96	Caputo et al.	·····	380	26	7/12/94	
				This contraction of the section of the			<u> </u>	
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,						<u> </u>	
			· ·		· · · ·	+	<u> </u>	·····
				-				
·		ļ						
i								
	<u> </u>	 						
							<b> </b>	
				T. 500 W.T.				
	DOCUMENT		FUREIGN PATEN	T DOCUMENTS			T	
INITIALS	NUMBER	DATE	NAME (S)		COUNTRY		TRANSL	ATION?
					· · ·		15	NU
• 								
	1	СОММ	ONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING	U.S. PATENT APPLICATIO	ONS			
EXAMINER'S INITIALS	SERIAL NUMBER	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	APPLICANT(S)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	DATE
all _	08/869,120	SPY-003	William P. Bialick et	al.			6/4/97	
<u> </u>		<u> </u>	<u>L:</u>		<u> </u>			
EXAMINERIS	AUTHOR(S) TTT		UTHER DOC	LUMENTS		<u></u>		
U		UNIC, FERII	HEHI FAGES, EIL,	· · ·				
INITIALS		· · ·	·	· · · .				
INITIALS			······································				·····	· · · · · ·
INITIALS								
INITIALS								
INITIALS								
INITIALS								
INITIALS								
INITIALS					7-7			

· · ·

•

· · ·

Form PT0-1449

.

## **Other Prior Art**

According to the information contained in form PTO-1449 or PTO-892, there are one or more other prior art/non-patent literature documents missing from the original file history record obtained from the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Upon your request we will attempt to obtain these documents from alternative resources. Please note that additional charges will apply for this service.

This page is not part of the official USPTO record. It has been determined that content identified on this document is missing from the original file history record.

∍ informa pplicatio system	History Date <u>1997</u> - ation retrieved from USPT in Information Retrieval in records at www.uspto.	<u>(l-04</u> O Patent (PAIR) .gov			BEST COPY
		•			
•					· ·
			ANT OF COL		, · ·
				UNITED STAT	DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
				Address: COMMISSION Washington	VER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
			PATES OF		
Ľ	APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING/RECEIP	'T DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO./TITLE
	08/869.305	63.7647.972	TALAN TOK		1.1 1717.4 Dub A
	na na suntun a gourseran	4,44,773 1,3 mg	10 T MBC & WHY		M 244 አ - በብቁ
			070074	1. 15. 21	
	DAVID R GPAH	16414	US DE CL	. 1 11 4	NOT ASSIGNED
	1337 CHEWPON MILPITAS CA	L AVENUE Senos			
	tinkingan tina tanan sara .	ور در دوا در ا			2202
				DATE MA	NLED:
		NOTICE TO F	ILE MISSING PA	RTS OF APPLICAT	I I I Z U4Z 92
			Filing Date G	ranted	
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFR any fee fee und	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$ 1 1.16(e). Applicant is give s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a 🗆 large en TWO MONTHS I abandonment. Ext FR 1.136(a).	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the NG WITH THE PAYME r in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in 1 which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension
An App required 3-6 only 37 CFR any feet fee und	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$ 1.1.16(e). Applicant is give s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C quired items on this for	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS I abandonment. Ext XFR 1.136(a). <i>rm are filed withir</i> (varified statement)	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity  small entity FROM THE DATE ( tensions of time may the period set ab	Dication. However, the NG WITH THE PAYME I in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension
An App required 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Q large</i> (1, T	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$ 1.16(e). Applicant is give s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C quired items on this for pentity [] small entity ( he statutory basic filing fe	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex ZFR 1.136(a). <i>rm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is:	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	Dication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension
An App required 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Q large</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS 1 abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). rm are filed within (verified statement ee is:	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	Dication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFR any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>I arge</i> 1. T	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex XFR 1.136(a). rm are filed within (verified statement ee is:	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME r in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a <b>cove, the total amount</b>	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension <b>owed by applicant as a</b>
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex ZFR 1.136(a). <i>rm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	Dilication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the t	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension <b>owed by applicant as a</b>
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>A</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS 1 abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). <i>rm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension <b>b owed by applicant as a</b> file a verified small entity m fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFR any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Diarge</i> 2. <i>J</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$A and fees identifier y of \$A and fees identifier y of \$A and fees identifier s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C aquired items on this for s entity [] small entity ( he statutory basic filing fe additional claim fees of \$ Applicant must either sub he oath or declaration: ] is missing.	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex ZFR 1.136(a). <i>frm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount ove, the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over the total over to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension a owed by applicant as a file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFR any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>J</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS 1 abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). form are filed within (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension a <b>owed by applicant as a</b> file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. 2. 4 2. 4 2. 4 2. 4 2. 4 4 2. 4 4 5 5 5 7 5 7 6 8 1 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identified y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). Frm are filed within (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity small entity FROM THE DATE ( tensione of time may n the period set ab nt filed), is \$	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in h which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension towed by applicant as a file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFH any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>J</i> 3. T	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$ 1.16(e). Applicant is gives s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C <b>equired items on this for</b> <b>e entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for entity □ small entity ( he statutory basic filing for insufficient. Applicant must submit \$ statement claiming such a Additional claim fees of \$ Applicant must either sub he oath or declaration: is missing. does not cover the ne does not include the o An oath or declaration in the show Application Nu	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). erm are filed within (verified statement) ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of basic filing fee and/or multiple dependent clain I additional claims for with plicant's residence.	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension a <b>owed by applicant as a</b> fille a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFR any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>I</i> 3. TI 1. T 5. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. 1. 2. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i>I</i> 4. <i></i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$A 1.16(e). Applicant is gives s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C <b>quired items on this for</b> <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e entity G amail entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>e oath</b> or declaration: <b>G</b> does not cover the ne <b>G</b> does not include the oath of above Application Nu hepsignature(s) to the oath	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS 1 abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). <i>It mare filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME is no compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a nove, the total amount of the	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension to owed by applicant as a file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>J</i> 2. <i>J</i> 4. (1)	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$ 1.16(e). Applicant is give s required above to avoid ler the provisions of 37 C <b>equired items on this for</b> <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for <b>a entity</b> □ <b>small entity</b> ( he statutory basic filing for a insufficient. Additional claim fees of \$ Applicant must either sub he oath or declaration: □ is missing. □ does not include the of <i>An oath or declaration In</i> the above Application Nu heysignature(s) to the oat a missing. □ by a person other tha	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). form are filed within (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	Dilication. However, the in NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a cove, the total amount of the	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension <b>a owed by applicant as a</b> file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF fee und If all re Large 2. 2. 4 4. 4.	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex ZFR 1.136(a). <i>International of the statement</i> ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension a <b>owed by applicant as a</b> <i>file a verified small entity</i> im fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF any fee tee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2. <i>I</i> 3. TI C 4. (1) C 4. (1) C 5. TI	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS 1 abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). <i>It mare filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	blication. However, the i NG WITH THE PAYME in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of the to	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension towed by applicant as a file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>I arge</i> <i>I a b arge</i> <i>I a</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex ZFR 1.136(a). <i>Internate filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the in NG WITH THE PAYME is no compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a cove, the total amount of basic filing fee and/or multiple dependent clain i additional claims for with plicant's residence. Ing residence information 7 CFR 1.42, 1.43, or 1. R 1.63, Identifying the re oath or declaration:	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension of <b>owed by applicant as a</b> fille a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 2	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). <i>Imm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the in NG WITH THE PAYME is in compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a hove, the total amount of th	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension towed by applicant as a file a verified small entity in fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Q</i> 1. T <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i> <i>I</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex FR 1.136(a). form are filed within (verified statement ee is: ////////////////////////////////////	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	Dilcation. However, the in NG WITH THE PAYME is no compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a cove, the total amount of th	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension to owed by applicant as a file a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require: 3-6 only 37 CFFi fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>I any fee</i> fee und <i>I any fee</i> fee und <i>I all re</i> <i>I any fee</i> fee und <i>I all re</i> <i>I any fee</i> <i>I </i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex CFR 1.136(a). <i>Imm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the investment of WITH THE PAYME of a compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a pove, the total amount of the total amoun	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension to owed by applicant as a file a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require: 3-6 onl: 37 CFF any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> 2	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex CFR 1.136(a). <i>Imm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the in NG WITH THE PAYME is in compliance with 37 OF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a pove, the total amount of th	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension it <b>owed by applicant as a</b> file a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due. on and identifying the application by 47. application by the above antor(s), identifying this application by ut payment (37 CFR 1.21(m)). int.
An App require 3-6 only 37 CFF any fee fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>2.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1.</i> <i>1</i>	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex CFR 1.136(a). form are filed within (verified statement ee is: status (37 CFR 1.2 boxistic (37 CFR 1.	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity □ small entity FROM THE DATE ( tensions of time may n the period set ab nt filed), is \$ 	plication. However, the investment of the payment o	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay a petition accompanied by the extension it <b>owed by applicant as a</b> fille a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due.
An App require: 3-6 only 37 CFF fee und <i>If all re</i> <i>Large</i> 1 T T 1 T 2 2 3 . T 1 C 2 4 5 . T 1 C 2 5 . T 1 C 2 5 . T 2 5 . T 2 5 . T 2 5 . T 2 5 . T 5 . T	lication Number and Filin d items and fees identifier y of \$	ng Date have been d below must be tin for a □ large en TWO MONTHS d abandonment. Ex CFR 1.136(a). <i>Imm are filed within</i> (verified statement ee is: 	assigned to this app nely submitted ALOI entity	plication. However, the investment of WITH THE PAYME of a compliance with 37 DF THIS NOTICE within y be obtained by filing a pove, the total amount of the total amount of the basic filling fee and/or multiple dependent clair i additional claims for with plicant's residence. Ing residence information of the context of the the total of the context of the total and the oath or declaration: and by the omitted invest ock was returned without payme .821-1.825." Box Missing Parts."	items indicated below are missing. The NT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in a which to file all required items and pay petition accompanied by the extension it <b>owed by applicant as a</b> file a verified small entity im fees, are required. which fees are due.

Initial Patent Examination Division (703) 308-1202

	B	
	12/98	0 0.9
ł		, PTO

			Sector		
IN THE	UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRAD	EMARK OFFICE	Ħ		
Applicants:	William P. Bialick et al.				
Assignee:	Spyrus, Inc.	2			
Title:	Peripheral Device With Integra Functionality	ated Security			
Serial No.:	08/869,305 Filed: June 4	, 1997			
Examiner:	Unknown Group Art Unit:	2202			
Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004					
			-		
		Milpitas, Californi January 5, 1998	a		

Box Missing Parts Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D. C. 20231

RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF APPLICATION - FILING DATE GRANTED

Sir:

In response to the "Notice to File Missing Parts of Application - Filing Date Granted" mailed by the United States Patent and Trademark Office on November 4, 1997, the following documents are enclosed to complete the filing of the abovereferenced patent application:

- Declaration and Power of Attorney for Patent Application, signed in counterpart by the inventors in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63;
- Copy of Notice to File Missing Parts of Application -Filing Date Granted; and
- 3. Verified Statement Under 37 CFR 1.9(f) and 1.27(c) Claiming Small Entity Status by Assignee.

- 1 -

Enclosed is a check (Check No. 1155) in the amount of \$961.00 for:

- 1. Statutory basic filing fee - \$395.00;
- 2. Additional claim fees - \$501.00; and
- Surcharge for filing declaration on a date later than З. the filing date of the application - \$65.00.

It is hereby submitted that the enclosed documents complete the filing of the above-referenced patent application and justify the filing date of June 4, 1997. This document is being submitted in duplicate. If there are any questions regarding this Response, please telephone Applicants' undersigned attorney at (408) 945-9912.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on January 5, 1998.

Sinhum

Respectfully submitted,

David R. Graham

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

87

- 2 -

DECLARATION AL , POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR PAILNT APPLICATION

ma below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

ō

c

residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of subject matter (process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter, or an improvement thereof) which is claimed and for which a patent is sought by way of the application entitled: <u>Peripheral</u> <u>Device With Integrated Security Functionality</u>

which (check) [ ] is attached hereto.
[ ] and is amended by the Preliminary Amendment attached
hereto.
[X] was filed on June 4, 1997, as Application
Serial No. 08/869,305.

[] and was amended on (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understood the contents of the above-identified application, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the United States Patent and Trademark Office information known to me to be material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a).

I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, § 119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate for the same invention having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed:

Prior Foreign Application(s)

P	r	ĺ	0	r	ĺ	t	Y	C]	La:	im	ed	
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	-----	----	----	--

N/A			Yes	No
(Number)	(Country)	(Date Filed)		
			Yes	No
(Number)	(Country)	(Date Filed)		

I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §§ 119 and 365(a) of any international patent application(s), listed below, that do not designate the United States, but do designate at least one country other than the United States, and have also identified below any such international application for the same invention having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed:

Prior Internatio	onal Application(s)	Priority	y Claimed
N/A		Yes	No
Number)	(Date Filed)		
	·	Yes	NO
(umber)	(Date Filed)		

hereby claim the pricity benefit under Title 35, United States Code, [19(e) of the United States provisional patent application(s) listed fow and, insofar as any subject matter of the claims of this application mot disclosed in such prior United States provisional application(s) in manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, [§ 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which became available between the filing date of the prior provisional application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

N/A (Appl. Ser. No.) (Date Filed) (Status-patented, pending, abandoned)

(Appl. Ser. No.) (Date Filed)

(Status-patented, pending, abandoned)

I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, § 120 of the United States patent application(s) listed below and, insofar as any subject matter of the claims of this application is not disclosed in such prior United States application(s) in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which became available between the filing date of the prior application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

(Appl. Ser. No.) (Date Filed)

(Status-patented, pending, abandoned)

(Appl. Ser. No.) (Date Filed)

(Status-patented, pending, abandoned)

Priority Claimed

I hereby claim the priority benefit under Title 35, United States Code, §§ 120 and 365(c) of any international patent application(s), listed below, that designate the United States and have also identified below any such international application for the same invention having a filing date before that of the application(s) on which priority is claimed, and, insofar as any subject matter of the claims of this application is not disclosed in such prior international application(s) in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which became available between the filing date of the prior international application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

Prior International Application(s)

N/A		Yes	No
(Number)	(Date Filed)		
		Yes	No
(Number)	(Date Filed)		

I hereby appoint the following attorney, with full power of substitution, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: David R. Graham, Reg. No. 36,150.

Please address all correspondence regarding this application to David R. Graham, 1337 Chewpon Avenue, Milpitas, California 95035.

Please direct all telephone calls regarding this application to David R. Graham at telephone number (408) 945-9912.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made herein on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Title 18, United States Code, § 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor William P. Bialick	
Residence <u>Clarksville</u> , <u>Maryland</u>	Citizenship <u>US</u>
Post Office Address 7150 Moorland Drive	
Clarksville, Maryland 21029	-1735
Inventor's signature Mullutation	Date 18 Dec 97
Full name of inventor <u>Mark J Sutherland</u>	
Residence <u>Milpitas, California</u>	Citizenship <u>US</u>
Post Office Address <u>1209 Eagle Ridge Way</u>	
<u>Milpitas, Califonia 95035-7</u>	817
Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor <u>Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson</u> Residence <u>Belvedere, California</u> Post Office Address <u>296 Beach Road</u>	Citizenship <u>US</u>
Belvedere, California 94920	-2472
Inventor's signature Full name of inventor Thomas K. Rowland Residence Los Gatos, California Post Office Address R. 0. Roy 33157	Date <u>12-18-97</u> Citizenship <u>US</u>
Los Gatos California 9503	1-3157
GOB_GUCOB/_CUTITOTHIR_ 5555	
Inventor's signature	Date
Full name of inventor <u>Kirk W. Skeba</u> Residence <u>Fremont, Califonia</u> Post Office Address 400 Calistoga Circle	Citizenship <u>US</u>
Fremont, California 94536-7	620
Inventor's signature <u>Russell</u> Honda Full name of inventor <u>Russell D. Housley</u> Residence <u>Herndon</u> , <u>Virginia</u>	Date <u>20 Aug 1797</u> Citizenship <u>US</u>
Post Utilice Address <u>918 Spring Knoll Drive</u>	
Herndon, Virginia	

З

lowing attorney, with ful bower of substitution, mereby appoint the . **F**prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United Sates Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: David R. Graham, ♥g. No. 36,150. ease address all correspondence regarding this application to David R. raham, 1337 Chewpon Avenue, Milpitas, California 95035. Please direct all telephone calls regarding this application to David R. Graham at telephone number (408) 945-9912. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made herein on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Title 18, United States Code, § 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon. Date 12/19/97 Inventor's signature ////// Citizenship US Clarksville, Maryland 21029-1735 Date 18 Dec 97 Inventor's signature /////// Sutherland Citizenship <u>US</u> Residence Milpitas, California Post Office Address <u>1209 Eagle Ridge Way</u> Milpitas, Califonia 95035-7817 Inventor's signature Date Full name of inventor Janet L. Dolphin-Peterson Residence Belvedere, California Citizenship US Post Office Address 296 Beach Road California 94920-2472 <u>Belvedere,</u> Date 12-18-97 Inventor's signature Full name of inventor Thomas K Rowland Residence Los Gatos, California Citizenship US Post Office Address 33157 P.O. Box California 95031-3157 Los Gatos, Inventor's signature <u>KI W.</u> Full name of inventor <u>Kirk W.</u> Residence Fremont <u>w.</u> 2h Date 2/23/97 Skeba Citizenship US Residence Fremont, Califonia Post Office Address 400 Calistoga Circle Fremont, California 94536-7620 and Date 20 Aug 1997\_ Inventor's signature Full name of inventor Russell Housley Residence <u>Herndon</u>, Virginia Citizenship US Post Office Address \_\_ 918 Spring Knoll Drive <u>Herndon, Virginia</u>

mereby appoint the f. lowing attorney, with full power of substitution, prosecute this application and to transact all business in the United ates Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: David R. Graham, eg. No. 36,150. Rease address all correspondence regarding this application to David R. Graham, 1337 Chewpon Avenue, Milpitas, California 95035. Please direct all telephone calls regarding this application to David R. Graham at telephone number (408) 945-9912. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made herein on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Title 18, United States Code, § 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon. Inventor's signature Date Full name of inventor William P. Bialick Residence Clarksville, Maryland Citizenship US Post Office Address \_\_\_\_ 7150 Moorland Drive Clarksville, Maryland 21029-1735 Inventor's signature Date 18 Dec 97 Citizenship <u>US</u> Residence Milpitas, California 1209 Eagle Ridge Way Post Office Address Milpitas, Califonia 95035-7817 Date 20-DEC-97 Inventor's signature 0 Dolphin-Peterson Full name of inventor Janet L Residence Belvedere, California Citizenship US Post Office Address 296 Beach Road California 94920-2472 Belvedere, Inventor's signature ////// Full name of inventor Thomas K. Rowl Date <u>12-18-97</u> and Residence Los Gatos, California Citizenship <u>US</u> P.O. Box 33157 Post Office Address Los Gatos, California 95031-3157 Inventor's signature Date Full name of inventor Kirk W. Skeba Residence Fremont, Califonia Citizenship US Post Office Address <u>400 Calistoga Circle</u> Fremont, California 94536-7620 Eusell Date 20 Aug 1997\_ Inventor's signature Full name of inventor Russell D. Housley Residence Herndon, Virginia Citizenship <u>US</u> 918 Spring Knoll Post Office Address Drive Herndon, Virginia 3

**BEST COPY** UNITED STATES & PARTMENT OF COMMERCE Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS Washington, D.C. 20231 APPLICATION NUMBER FILING/RECEIPT DATE FIRST NAMED APPLICANT ATTORNEY DOCKET NO /TITLE 06/869, 305 雨子 6月 イタブ BIALLEN Ļя ·5户Y…004 0292/1104 DAVID R GRAHAM NUL ASSERD 1337 CHEWFON AVENUE MILPITAS CA 95605 2202 R. K. K DATE MAILED: 11/0///97 NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF APPLICATION , Filing Date Granted Ś. An Application Number and Filing Date have been assigned to this application. However, the items indicated below are missing. The required items and fees identified below must be timely submitted ALONG WITH THE PAYMENT OF A SURCHARGE for items 1 and 3-6 only of \$ for a 🗌 large entity 🗋 small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27. The surcharge is set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(e). Applicant is given TWO MONTHS FROM THE DATE OF THIS NOTICE within which to file all required items and pay any fees required above to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). all required items on this form are filed within the period set above, the total amount owed by applicant as a Vierge entity 🗆 small entity (verified statement filed), is \$\_\_ The statutory basic filing fee is: missing. D insufficient. 🖅 Applicant must submit \$ to complete the basic filing fee and/or file a verified small entity statement claiming such status (37 CFR 1,27), 0QAdditional claim fees of \$ , including any multiple dependent claim fees, are required. Applicant must either submit the additional claim fees or cancel additional claims for which fees are due. **3.** The oath or declaration: is missing. does not cover the newly submitted items. does not identify the application to which it applies. does not include the city and state or foreign country of applicant's residence. An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1. 63, including residence information and identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date is required. The/signature(s) to the oath or declaration is/are: missing. by a persón other than inventor or person qualified under 37 CFR 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required. □ 5. The signature of the following joint inventor(s) is missing from the oath or declaration: An oath or declaration listing the names of all inventors and signed by the omitted inventor(s), identifying this application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required. processing fee is required since your check was returned without payment (37 CFR 1.21(m)). 6.A\$ 7. Your filing receipt was mailed in error because your check was returned without payment.  $\square$  8. The application does not comply with the Sequence Rules. See attached "Notice to Comply with Sequence Rules 37 CFR 1.821-1.825." **9. OTHER:** Direct the response and any questions about this notice to "Attention: Box Missing Parts." A copy of this notice <u>MUST</u> be returned with the response. Un 11- all and Customer Service Center Initial Patent Examination Division (703) 308-1202 AUNCAN 0000020 08869355.00 OF \*U.S. GPC: 1996 65,0000 . CC 205 LICT 199 NR n 1

-1 -	
	<b></b>
	A.L.
	- 1000 - E 4 1
1 100	
1 200	
1 843	
1.	
i vo	
1	
1	
1	
1	
•	

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicants: William P. Bialick et al.

Spyrus, Inc.

Assignee: Title:

Peripheral Device With Integrated Security Functionality

Serial No.: 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997

Examiner: Unknown Group Art Unit: Unknown

Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004

San Jose, California

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D. C. 20231

VERIFIED STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 1.9(f) AND 1.27(c) CLAIMING SMALL ENTITY STATUS BY ASSIGNEE

Sir:

I declare that I am an official empowered to act on behalf of the concern identified above as assignee.

Exclusive rights to the above invention as described in U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/869,305, filed June 4, 1995 have been conveyed to and remain with the above concern.

For purposes of paying reduced fees under Section 41 of Title 35 of the United States Code with regard to this invention, I declare that the above concern qualifies as a small business concern as defined in 13 CFR 121.12 and reproduced in 37 CFR 1.9(d), namely, the concern's number of employees, including those of its affiliates, does not exceed 500 persons and the concern has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not be classified as an independent inventor under 37 CFR 1.9(c) if that person made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern under 37 CFR 1.9(d)or a nonprofit organization under 37 CFR 1.9(e).

I acknowledge my duty to file, in this application or patent, notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate per 37 CFR (1.28 (b)).

- 1 -

I further declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true, that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true, that these statements are made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of this application, or any patent issued thereon.

Signature:	in Mile Date: November 25, 1997
Official's Name:	Kevin O'Neill, Esg.
Official's Title:	Corporate Secretary
Concern's Name:	Spyrus, Inc.
Concern's Address:	2460 North First Street, Suite 100
	San Jose, CA 95131

- 2 -

THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFIC ints: William P. Bialick et al. Assignee: Spyrus, Inc. 11.23.41 Title: Peripheral Device With Integrated Security Functionality RECEIVED Filed: June 4, 1997 Serial No.: 08/869,305 OCT 1 3 1998 2202 Examiner: Unknown Group Art Unit: **GROUP 2100** Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004 Milpitas, California October 6, 1998

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

> INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT WITH CERTIFICATION UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.97(e)(1)

Sir:

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, § 1.97 and § 1.98, Applicants bring the documents (copies enclosed) listed on the enclosed Form PTO-1449 to the Examiner's attention in the above-identified application. These documents were cited by the European Patent Office in the International Search Report (copy enclosed) for the corresponding PCT Application No. PCT/US98/11052.

Citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the documents are necessarily prior art with respect to the instant invention. Also, citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the information disclosed therein is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b). 98 OCT 15 AM 8: 52

The undersigned hereby certifies in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §1.97(e)(1) that each item of information

- 1 -

contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>October 6, 1998</u>.

10-6-97 Dawil R. Kisham

Respectfully submitted and certified by,

R. Kraham ę and David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

- 2 -

Implies the second of t									
International of Processing Stream and the second str									
ПУСКА В. И. И.         Винет 1 ог.           U.S. DEPT OF COMBREE - INTERT AND TRANSPORT OF COMBREAL - INTERCONST.         ATTORNY DOCKT NO.: SPT-OD.         SERIAL NO.: ORANG, 2005, 2005           Interdevention of cocked and of the series of the s									
<th< td=""><td></td><td>•</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></th<>		•							
Mark 1         Mark 2         SHEET 1 OF           U.S. DEPT OF COMPERE - PATERT AND TRADENED OF FRAME         ATTORNEY DOCKT MD.: SPY-DOK         SERIAL MD.: SANGAS, 205           INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         ATTORNEY DOCKT MD.: SPY-DOK         SERIAL MD.: SANGAS, 205           AMPRENTS         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         APPLICAMEST WITTEN P. BIBLICK # 24.         FILME DATE: JUNE 40.         SPR-TASS           MARKETS         PATORT RUMBER         ISSUE DATE         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         MITTENTS         SUB-CLASS         FILME DATE           MARKETS         PATORT RUMBER         ISSUE DATE         INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION         SUB-CLASS         FILME DATE           MARKETS         SALEST TO RUMARY							N		
10.5. ВЕРТ ОГ СОННЕКС – РАТЕНТ ЛО ТАЗОСКОВ ФЛЯС.         АТТОМЕТ ОСТ. 10., 597-00.         SERTAL INO.: 807-03, 305           INFORMATION DISCUSSING CITA/CON (Use several shoets 17 new or 017 - 0 899.)         АТТОМЕТ OUTER: UNDER A DELEMING A CITA FLINK DATE: UNDER A DELEMING A DELEMING         APTICANTS: MILLION P. DIBILICU et al. PRILING DATE: UNDER A DELEMING AND INTER: 2002           MANNER'S (MAL 5.563.721         DY20/76         Develow INFORMATION DATE: 2002         Develow PRILING DATE: 2002         PATENT NUMBER         ISSUE ONTE         PUTENT SAME AND DATE: 2002         PATENT SAME AND DATE: 2002         PATENT NUMBER         ISSUE ONTE         PUTENT SAME AND DATE: 2002         PATENT NUMBER         PUTENT SAME AND DATE: 2002         PATENT SAME AND DATE: 2002         PA									
MATOMER AND TRACING ONFICE           INTOMERCE - PATENT AND TRACENDO ONFICE           INTENT INDER ISSUE DATE           INTENT INDENT INDENT INDENT INTENT INDENT INDEN									
MATCH TABLER AND TROPORTED THE TOTOR       U.S. DEPT OF COMPEREE - PATENT AND TROPORTED DISCUSSER CITATION THEOREMICON DISCUSSER CITATION (the several sheets 11 meeting) 17 - 0 888 and 1711 CILLIE DATE: JUNE 4, 1997     DISULTS MILLIER P. BIOLICK ET R. SPT-004     SERIAL NO.: SPT-004     SERIAL NO.: SPT-004     DISULTS ANT UNIT: ZOIZ       AMINEN'S       AMINEN'S       CLASS     SUP-CLASS     FILING DATE       AMINEN'S     CLASS     SUP-CLASS       AMINEN'S     CLASS     SUP-CLASS       AMINEN'S     CLASS     SUP-CLASS       AMINEN'S <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>									
Miles         Miles <th< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>· · ·</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></th<>			· · ·						
Internet of the considered of the con					•	N.C		,	
U.S. DEPT OF COMMERCE - PATENT HAD TRAVERING DATE: INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITERION (USe several sheats 1 f noce of 1 - 8 988 s) APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK et al. FILMS DATE: June 4, 1997 GROUP ART UNIT: 2002 APPLICAMES: WILLIAM P. BIBLICK ET AL. FILMS DATE: JUNE DATE INVENTOR(S) TO 1000 BRATERIE ET al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 4, 590, 1070 DIT 5, 17597 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 4, 590, 1070 DIT 5, 17978 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 4, 590, 1070 DIT 5, 17978 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 4, 590, 1070 DIT 5, 17978 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 4, 590, 1070 DIT 5, 17978 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 5, 17978 DIT 5, 17978 STOND, 111 et al. SOB 25 27/24/89 DIT 5, 17978 DIT 5, 17108 DATE MITNER'S DOCUMENT DATE, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS MINREY S SERIAL NUMBER ATTONEY APPLICATION APPLICATIONS MINREY'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTONEY APPLICATION APPLICATIONS MINREY'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTONEY APPLICATION APPLICATIONS MINREY'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC. DITHER DOCUMENTS ANTINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC. DITHER DOCUMENTS ANTINEY'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC. DITHE CONSIDERED; 11/23/98						par	+ 07 # 2	-/ She	ET 1 OF
APPLICATE: WITTER P. BISTICK et al.           APPLICATE: June 4, 1997           RECOVER THE P. BISTICK et al.           APPLICATE: June 4, 1997           GOUD ART UNIT: 2202           APPLICATE: June 4, 1997           CALL 5, 545,720           DIVENTIONE           APPLICATE: June 4, 1997           BARE THERE 5, 107,013           DIVENTION           COMPARE TO OCCOMENTS           APPLICATE: JUNE PRIME PRES, ETC.           COMPARE TO DIVENTINGES, ETC.           COMPARE	U.S.	DEPT OF COMMERCE	E - PATENT AND	TRADEMARK OFFICE	ATTORNEY DOCKET N	0.: SPY-004	SERIAL NO	.: 08/8	69,305
(Use several shocks if nace or PL - 8 883 h)         FILING DATE: June 4, 1997         GROUP ART UNIT: 2202           ANIMES           COMPONE TO COLMENTS           ODCLMENT           ODCLMENT           DOCLMENT		INFORMATION	DISCLOSURE CI	TATION	APPLICANTS: WILL	iam P. Bialic	k et al.		
AMINER'S         PATENT NUMBER         ISSUE DATE         INVENTICIS           AMINER'S         PATENT NUMBER         ISSUE DATE         INVENTICIS         235         SUB-CLASS         FILING DATE           CALL         5.5.543,721         0/20/96         DEPRICM         395         187.01         4/28/94           CALL         5.63,721         0/20/96         DEPRICM         395         187.01         4/28/94           CALL         5.63,774         5/13/97         Stone, III et al.         395         883         2/23/95           CALL         5.63,774         5/13/97         Stone, III et al.         395         883         2/23/95           CALL         4.910,776         3/20/90         .0yke         380         25         2/24/89           CALL         QUET 13.19910		(Use several	sheets if nec	essary 1 - 8 1998 A	FILING DATE: Jun	e 4, 1997	GROUP ART	UNIT:	2202
Animers's ITTALS         PATENT NUMBER         ISSUE DATE         INVENTOR(S)         CLASS         SUB-CLASS         FILING DATE           QML         5,548,721         dr20/96         Demsice         395         107.01         4/28/94           QML         5,548,721         dr20/96         Demsice         395         107.01         4/28/94           QML         5,548,721         dr20/96         Demsice         395         107.01         4/28/94           QML         5,548,750         10/10/95         Bernett et al.         355         883         2/3795           QML         4,910,775         3/20/90         .Dyke         300         25         2/24/89           QML         4,910,775         3/20/90         .Dyke         300         25         2/24/89           QML         4,910,775         3/20/90         .Dyke         300         25         2/24/89           QUC1 1 3 19900				He HE DATE					
TTAILS         PATERN ROBER         ISSUE DATE         IMPRINTS         CLASS         SUB-CLASS         FILING DATE           DM         5,568,721         6720/96         Demsice         395         187.01         4728/94           DM         5,568,721         6720/96         Demsice         395         187.01         4728/94           DM         5,568,721         6720/96         Demsice         395         187.01         4728/94           DM         5,650,774         51/397         Stone, III et al.         395         883         2/3/95           DM         4,910,776         3/20/90         Dyke         380         25         2/24/89           DM         4,910,776         3/20/90         Dyke         380         25         2/24/89           DM         GROLIP 2100         D         D         D         D         D           DM         GROLIP 2100         D         D         D         D         D         D           FRECEIN PATENT DOCUMENTS         NAME(S)         DOCUMENT         TRANSLATION         NAME(S)         D         D         D           MURRY S         B2/03286         9/30/82         Lotharg         PCT         X         D	AMINEDIC			A DUMANT			T	1	
DML         5,543,721         6/20/96         Dems (co	ITIALS	PATENT NUMBER	ISSUE DATE	INVENIOR(5)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	DATE
ZAY         5,457,590         10/10/95         Barratt et al.         360         133         6/11/91           ZML         5,630,174         5/13/97         Stone, III et al.         395         883         2/3/95           ZML         4,910,776         5/20/90         .0yke         380         25         2/24/89           ZML         0.017         719/10         .0         .0         .0         .0         .0           ZMINRE'S         DOCUMENT         PUBLICATION         MARE(S)         COUNTRY         TRANSLATION?         YES         NO           ZMINRE'S         DOCUMENT         PUBLICATION         MARE(S)         COUNTRY         YES         NO           ZMINRE'S         SERIAL NUMBER         ATTORNEY         APPLICANT(S)         CLASS <t< td=""><td><u>BN</u></td><td>5,548,721</td><td>8/20/96</td><td>Denslow</td><td></td><td>395</td><td>187.01</td><td>4/28/9</td><td>4</td></t<>	<u>BN</u>	5,548,721	8/20/96	Denslow		395	187.01	4/28/9	4
EMIL     5,630,174     5/13/97     Stone, III et al.     395     883     2/3/95       EMIL     4,910,776     3/20/90     joyke     380     25     2/24/89       Image: Strate in the st	<u>ww</u>	5,457,590	10/10/95	Barrett et al.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	360	133	6/11/9	1
COMPONENT         SIZO/90         Loyke         380         25         Z/Z4/89           PECENVED		5,630,174	5/13/97	Stone, III et al.		395	883	2/3/95	
PRECEIVED       UCT 1 3 1990       UCT 1 3 1990       GROUP 2100       POREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS         POREIGN PATENT PAGES, ETC.         POREIGN PATENT         POREIGN PATENT         POREIGN PATENT         POREIGN PATENT </td <td></td> <td>4,910,776</td> <td>3/20/90</td> <td>Dyke</td> <td>······</td> <td>380</td> <td>25</td> <td>2/24/8</td> <td>9</td>		4,910,776	3/20/90	Dyke	······	380	25	2/24/8	9
BECEIVED       UCITIDIPYIO       UCITIDIPYIO       GROUP 2100       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       ANINER'S       DOCUMENT       NUMBER       DATE       PUBLICATION       NUMBER       DATE       DATE CONSIDERED:       11/23/98					······				
OUT Y : ) 1998           GROLIP 2100           FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS           ANIMER'S         DOCUMENT           NUMBER         PUBLICATION DATE           VIII NUMBER         ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.           VIII NUMBER         ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.           VIII NUMBER         ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.           VIII NUMBER         ATTORNEY DATE CONSIDERED:           VIII NUMBER         VIII NUMBER           VIII NUMBER         PUBLICATION DATE CONSIDERED:           VIII NUMBER         ANIMER'S           ANIMER'S         ANIMER'S           ANIMER'S         ANIMER'S	<u></u>			<u> </u>	CENED				
ULT 1 3 1990       GROUP 31990       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       AMINER'S     DOCUMENTS       COMPONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS       ANINER'S SERIAL NUMBER     ATTORNEY     APPLICANT(S)       OTHER DOCUMENTS       ANINER'S       AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       ANINER'S       AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N       N       ANINER:       ANINER:       ANINER:       AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N       N       N       ANINER:       AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N       N					5 87				
GROUP 2100       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       AMINER'S     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       MODELIGENTION       MODELIGENTION       AMINER'S     COUNTRY       TRANSLATION?       CONTRY     TRANSLATION?       ADITE       CONMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS       AMINER'S     SERIAL NUMBER     ATTORNEY       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     SERIAL NUMBER     ATTORNEY       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.     SET AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N     AUTHOR       AUTHOR       AUTHOR (S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.     SET AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N     AUTHOR       AUTHOR       AUTHOR       AUTHOR       AUTHOR       AUTHOR <th< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>1 1 3 1990</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></th<>					1 1 3 1990				
FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       ANIMER*'S       DOCUMENT     PUBLICATION     MAME(S)       UM     NO 97/29416     8/14/97     Mooney et al.     PCT     X       UM     NO 97/29416     8/14/97     Mooney et al.     PCT     X       UM     NO 82/03286     9/30/82     Lofberg     PCT     X				GRO GRO	UP 2100		<u> </u>	ļ	
FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION       AMINER'S     DOCUMENT     DUBLICATION     NAME(S)     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       MM     M0 97/29416     8/14/97     Hooney et al.     PCT     X     Image: Source of the source of t	····					_		ļ	
FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S     DOCUMENT NUMBER     PUBLICATION DATE     NAME(S)     COUNTRY     TRANSLATION?       MUT     NO     97/29416     8/14/97     Mooney et al.     PCT     X     Image: State of the state o						<u> </u>			
AMINER'S DOCUMENT NUMBER PUBLICATION DATE NAME(S) COUNTRY TRANSLATION?  AMINER'S NUMBER PUBLICATION DATE NONey et al.  COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS  AMINER'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.  COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS  AMINER'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.  COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  AMINER: Ly V. Luca DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98				FOREIGN PATENT	DOCUMENTS				
Mine     Diff     Diff       Mill     w0 97/29416     8/14/97     Mooney et al.     PCT     X       Mill     w0 82/03286     9/30/82     Lofberg     PCT     X       COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS     CLASS     SUB-CLASS     FILING DATE       COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS       AMINER'S       SERIAL NUMBER     ATTORNEY       OTHER DOCUMENTS	CAMINER'S	DOCUMENT	PUBLICATION	NAME(S)		COUNTRY		TRANS	LATION?
ANIL         NO 97/29416         8/14/97         Mooney et al.         PCT         X           ANIL         MO 82/03286         9/30/82         Lofberg         PCT         X           COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS         CLASS         SUB-CLASS         FILING DATE           ANINER'S         SERIAL NUMBER         ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.         APPLICANT(S)         CLASS         SUB-CLASS         FILING DATE           OTHER ODCUMENTS           AMINER'S         AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.           OTHER ODCUMENTS           AMINER:           AMINER:           LY           APERIOR           LY           AMINER:           LY           LY	D.II.							YES	NO
WW     W0 82/03286     9/30/82     Lofberg     PCT     X       COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS       AMINER'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       N       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       OTHER DOCUMENTS       N       N       OTHER DOCUMENTS       AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.       N       N       N       N       OTHER CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	all	WO 97/29416	8/14/97	Mooney et al.		РСТ		x	
COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS  AMINER'S SERIAL NUMBER ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.  OTHER DOCUMENTS  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  OTHER DOCUMENTS  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, DESTRICT AUTHOR PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, DESTRICT AUTHOR PAGES, ETC.  AMINER'S AUTHOR DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	il f	WO 82/03286	9/30/82	Lofberg		РСТ		x	
COMMONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS         CAMINER'S       SERIAL NUMBER       ATTORNEY       APPLICANT (S)       CLASS       SUB-CLASS       FILING DATE         OTHER DOCUMENTS         OTHER DOCUMENTS         OTHER DOCUMENTS         AMINER'S         AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.         OTHER DOCUMENTS         OTHER DOC	•			Ę.					
AMINER'S       SERIAL NUMBER       ATTORNEY       APPLICANT(S)       CLASS       SUB-CLASS       FILING DATE         OTHER DOCUMENTS         OTHER DO			COMM	ONLY OWNED, CO-PENDING U	.S. PATENT APPLICAT	IONS			
AMINER: Ly V. Hue DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	AMINER'S	SERIAL NUMBER	ATTORNEY	APPLICANT (S)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	DATE
AMINER: Ly V, Luce DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98			DOCKET NO.						
AMINER: Ly V. Luc DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98								<u> </u>	
AMINER'S AUTHOR(S), TITLE, DATE, PERTINENT PAGES, ETC.					MENTE				
AMINER: Ly V. Lux DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	AMINER'S	AUTHOR(S) TIT		NENT DAGES STC					
AMINER: Ly V, Luc DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	NITIALS							∞ ⇒	
AMINER: Ly V, Lux DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98							10%	R R	
AMINER: Ly V, Luc DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98							55		<u> </u>
AMINER: Ly V, Lux DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98		+					2	E	
AMINER: Ly V. Lux DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98							, <u> </u>	3	
AMINER: Ly V, Luc DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	•								the second s
AMINER: Ly V, Luc DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	•				<b></b>		$\sim$		
AMINER: Ly V. Acce DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98	•					<b>4</b>	<b>N</b>		
LAMINER: LY V. YCLR DATE CONSIDERED: 11/23/98						<b>4</b> ., , `	,, <del>,</del> ,		
		] 1/	1.			11/22/00	, <b>~</b>		

BEST COP Transaction History Date 1998-12-11 Date information retrieved from USPTO Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system records at www.uspto.gov UNITED STATES CPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS Washington, D.C. 20231 APPLICATION NO. FILING DATE FIRST NAMED INVENTOR ATTORNEY DOCKET NO." 887869,03<u>,</u> ÷., 777 Quero. 6.7 1.1 da v Bigar Land ( 21/21 d Γ EXAMINER DAVID R GRAHAM 1937 CHEMPON AVERIE HUA, L MU PINAS CA TRAKES ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER 2705 ശ 12/11/98 DATE MAILED: Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding. **Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks** 

				`	
	с.,				
08/869.305					
1 001/000	C.				
		Application No.	Applicant(s)		
<b>Office Actio</b>	n Summary	Examiner		Group Art Unit	T
	-	Examine to		aloop Art onic	
—The MAILING DATE (	of this communication appea	rs on the cover shee	t beneath the co	orraspondence a	ddress
		-++	LAD war		
A SHORTENED STATUTORY F MAILING DATE OF THIS COM	PERIOD FOR RESPONSE IS S MUNICATION.	SET TO EXPIRE	<u> ZCE</u> -MONTI	H(S) FROM THE	
- Extensions of time may be evails	ble under the provisions of 37 CEB 1	1 136/a) in no event how		e he timely filed after	
from the mailing date of this com	munication.		ven may a respons	ie be unley ned alter	
<ul> <li>If the period for response specific</li> <li>If NO period for response is specific</li> </ul>	ed above is less than thirty (30) days, sified above, such period shall, by dei	, a response within the sta fault, expire SIX (6) MONT	tutory minimum of the mailing	hirty (30) days will be a date of this commun	considered time
- Failure to respond within the set	or extended period for response will,	by statute, cause the appl	ication to become A	BANDONED (35 U.S	.C. § 133).
Status		0			•
	man Octobe	\$ \$ 1998			
Responsive to communica	ation(s) med on	<u> </u>			•
This action is EINAL					
This action is FINAL. Since this application is in	condition for allowance except	for formal matters ar	neerution to to	the morite is alo	and in
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> </ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quavle</i> , 193	, t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1: 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to	the merits is clo	sed in
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> </ul>	condition for allowance except Ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	/ i for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 55 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to 213.	the merits is clo	sed in
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> </ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	/ t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to 213.	the merits is clo	sed in
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s) <u>1 - 32</u></li> </ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	/ t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to 213. is/are j	the merits is clo pending in the app	sed in blication.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	/ i for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to 213. is/are j is/are j	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co	sed in blication. nsideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	/ t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2	osecution as to 213. is/are j is/are j	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed	sed in Dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	1 for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2-) 3.( , 2 8, 1	Desecution as to         213.        is/are        is/are        is/are         2-7, 36 is/are	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 4 24 - 26 rejected.	sed in blication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193 $\frac{1}{2}$	t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2) $3(, 28)$	0580       as to         213.       is/are	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed, 24 - 26 rejected. objected to.	sed in Dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under $Ex$ parte Quayle, 193 $\frac{1}{2}$	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 $2 \rightarrow 3l \rightarrow 28$ , 2 $2 \rightarrow 3l \rightarrow 28$ , 2 $2 \rightarrow 3l \rightarrow 28$ , 2	Desecution as to         213.         is/are	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 4 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 7 2 and 27 biect to restriction	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under $Ex$ parte Quayle, 193 $\frac{1}{2}$	t for formal matters, pr 35  C.D. 1 1;  453  O.G. 2 $2  J. 3 ( ) 2 \text{ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $ $	is/are is/are	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 23 - 26 bject to restriction ement.	sed in dication. Insideration. or election
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under $Ex$ parte Quayle, 193 $\frac{1}{2}$	t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35  C.D. 1 1;  453  O.G. 2 2 - 3l - 28; i - 1.5 - 1b - 18	is/are su	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 4 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 2 3 2 - 26 bject to restriction ement.	sed in blication. Insideration. or election
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 $\frac{2}{5}$ , $\frac{3}{5}$ , $\frac{2}{5}$ , $\frac{3}{5}$ , $\frac{2}{5}$ , $\frac{3}{5}$ , $\frac{2}{5}$ , $\frac{3}{5}$ , $\frac{1}{5}$ , \frac	is/are su	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 22 - 26 rejected. objected to. 23 - 26 object to restriction penent.	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193 $\frac{1}{2}$	t for formal matters, pr 15 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 1 \cdot 5 \cdot 5$	besecution as to 13. is/are p is/are p is/are c is/are c is	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 24 - 26 objected to. 24 - 26 bject to restriction ement.	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, <b>pr</b> 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 $2 \rightarrow 3 / 2 $ $2 \rightarrow 3 / 2 $ 3 - 1 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 3 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 -	is/are p is/are su is/are su	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 23  and  27 bject to restriction ement. d.	sed in blication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35  C.D. 1 1;  453  O.G. 2 2  J.	besecution as to 13. is/are p is/are p is/are c 2?, 3@s/are c 2?, 3@s/are c p are su require d □ disapprove r.	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 24 26 rejected. objected to. 23 and 21 bject to restriction ement.	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35  C.D. 1 1;  453  O.G. 2 2  J.	besecution as to 213. 	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed, 4 24 - 26 rejected to. 2 3 and 27 bject to restriction ement.	sed in blication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under Ex parte Quayle, 193	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2, $3$ , $2$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$	besecution as to 13. is/are p is/are p is/are c 27. 3@s/are c 1.5/are c	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed d 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. Z 2 2 - 26 objected to. Z 2 2 - 26 objected to. Z 3 2 - 21 bject to restriction ement.	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under Ex parte Quayle, 193	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2, $3$ , $2$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$	a)-(d). s have been	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 7 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 7 2 2 - 26 bject to restriction ament.	sed in blication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35  C.D. 1 1;  453  O.G. 2 2  J. 3   J. 2   J. 3   J. 4   J. 5   J. 6   J. 5   J. 6   J. 6	a)-(d). basecution as to is/are is/are is/	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed, 4 24 - 26 rejected to. 7 3 and 27 bject to restriction ement.	sed in blication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2, $3/, 2$ , $2/, 22/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/, 2/,$	a)-(d). a)-(d). T Rule 1 7.2(a)).	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. A 24-26 rejected to. 3 and 27 bject to restriction ament. d.	sed in plication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3$ $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3$ $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 3$ ag Review, PTO-948. $3 \cdot 1 \cdot 5 \cdot 1 \cdot 4 \cdot 2 \cdot 5 \cdot 3 \cdot 3$	a)-(d). a)-(d). a)-(d). a)-(d). b)-(d). b)-(d). c)-(c)-(d). c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-(c)-	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 7 24 - 26 rejected. objected to. 7 2 24 - 26 bject to restriction ament.	sed in dication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	tor formal matters, pr 5 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2 3 2 2 8 2 3 7 2 3 8 2 3 7 2	a)-(d). a)-(d). T Rule 1 7.2(a)).	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 2 2 26 rejected to. 2 2 and 27 bject to restriction ament. d.	sed in plication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>This action is FINAL.</li> <li>Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	tor formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2, $3$ , $2$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $2$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$ , $3$	a)-(d). a)-(d). a)-(d). b)-(d). c) Interview Sumi	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed. 7 24 - 26 rejected to. 7 2 24 - 26 objected to. 7 3 24 27 bject to restriction ament. d.	sed in plication. Insideration.
<ul> <li>□ This action is FINAL.</li> <li>□ Since this application is in accordance with the pract</li> <li>Disposition of Claims</li> <li>□ Claim(s)</li></ul>	condition for allowance except ice under <i>Ex parte Quayle</i> , 193	t for formal matters, pr 35 C.D. 1 1; 453 O.G. 2 2 ) 3 / 2 2 ) 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 / 2 /	a)-(d). a)-(d). a)-(d). b)-(d). c)-	the merits is clo pending in the app withdrawn from co allowed, 4 24 - 26 rejected to. 3 2 - 26 objected to. 3 2 - 26 objected to. 3 2 - 26 objected to. 3 2 - 26 objected to. 3 2 - 26 ment.	sed in plication. Insideration. or election

U. S. Patent and Trademark Office

.

1. This application contains claims directed to the following patentably distinct species of the claimed invention: <u>first, second, third, fourth species of target means</u>.

Applicant is required under 35 U.S.C. 121 to elect a single disclosed species for prosecution on the merits to which the claims shall be restricted if no generic claim is finally held to be allowable. Currently, the target means is generic.

Applicant is advised that a response to this requirement must include an identification of the species that is elected consonant with this requirement, and a listing of all claims readable thereon, including any claims subsequently added. An argument that a claim is allowable or that all claims are generic is considered nonresponsive unless accompanied by an election.

Upon the allowance of a generic claim, applicant will be entitled to consideration of claims to additional species which are written in dependent form or otherwise include all the limitations of an allowed generic claim as provided by 37 CFR 1.141. If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which are readable upon the elected species. MPEP § 809.02(a).

Should applicant traverse on the ground that the species are not patentably distinct, applicant should submit evidence or identify such evidence now of record showing the species to be obvious variants or clearly admit on the record that this is the case. In either instance, if the examiner finds one of the inventions unpatentable over the prior art, the evidence or admission may be used in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) of the other invention.

2. During a telephone conversation with Mr. Vavid R. Graham (Reg. No. 36160) on November 6, 1998, a provisional election was made with traverse to prosecute the invention of the first species, claims 1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14, 17, 24-26, 28, 29, 30, 31 and 32. Affirmation of this election must be made by applicant in responding to this Office action, Claims 2, 3, 5, 20, 9, 10, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19-20, 21-

Page 2

Page 3

23 and 27 are withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner, 37 CFR 1.142(b), as being drawn to a non-elected invention.

3. Applicant is reminded that upon the cancellation of claims to a non-elected invention, the inventorship must be amended in compliance with 37 CFR 1.48(b) if one or more of the currently named inventors is no longer an inventor of at least one claim remaining in the application. Any amendment of inventorship must be accompanied by a diligently-filed petition under 37 CFR 1.48(b) and by the fee required under 37 CFR 1.17(h).

4. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless --

(e) the invention was described in a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent, or on an international application by another who has fulfilled the requirements of paragraphs (1), (2), and (4) of section 371(c) of this title before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent.

5. Claims 24-26 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by Novis et al (5,770,849

hereinafter Novis).

a. As per claim 24:

Novis teaches a peripheral device [10], comprising:

(1) security means [86] for enabling one or more security operations to be

performed on data ;

(2) a biometric device [14 (col. 3, lines 36-44; col. 9, lines 28-30)] for

receiving input data regarding a physical characteristic of a person based

upon a physical interaction of the person with the peripheral device;

Page 4

- (3) means [16] for enabling communication between
  - (a) the security means [86] and
  - (b) the biometric device [14],

(which communication is for transferring captured user characteristic

from biometric 14 to the security means 86 for authentication thereat

(col. 9, lines 26-37]; and

- (4) means [95] for enabling communication with a host computing device[96].
- b. As per claim 25 or 26:

Novis teaches that his biometric device comprises either:

(1) a fingerprint scanning device (in order to input biometric identifier such

as a finger print (col. 3, lines 37-40)] or

(2) a retinal scanning device [in order to input biometric identifier such as a retinal scan (col. 3, lines 37-40)].

6. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness

rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

7. This application currently names joint inventors. In considering patentability of the claims under 35 U.S.C. 103(a), the examiner presumes that the subject matter of the various claims was commonly owned at the time any inventions covered therein were made absent any evidence to the contrary.

Page 5

Applicant is advised of the obligation under 37 CFR 1.56 to point out the inventor and invention dates of each claim that was not commonly owned at the time a later invention was made in order for the examiner to consider the applicability of 35 U.S.C. 103(c) and potential 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103(a).

8. Claims 1, 8, and 14 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Novis et al (5,770,849 her

a. As per claims 1, 8, and 14:

i. Novis teaches a peripheral device, comprising:

- security means [86] for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;
- (2) target means [14 (col. 3, lines 36-44, col. 9, lines 28-30) for capturing biometric input] for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;
- (3) means [16] for enabling communication between
  - (a) the security means and
  - (b) the target means,

[which communication is for transferring captured user characteristic from biometric 14 to the security means 86 for authentication thereat (col. 9, lines 26-37];

(4) means [95] for enabling communication with a host computing device[96].

ii. Applican't s admitted prior art teaches:

Page 6

(1) incass [inherent in the host computing device 201 of Fig. 2] for operably connecting

- (a) [either] the security means [86] and/or the target means [14] to
- (b) the host computing device [96]

in response to an instruction from the host computing device.

iii.

It would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to maitain, (even when the security device 203 and the target device 202 of applican't admitted art are implemented in a single unit), the means [inherent in the host computing device 201 of Fig. 2] for operably

## connecting

- (a) [either] the security means [86] and/or the target means [14] to
- (b) the host computing device [96]

in response to an instruction from the host computing device.

- iv. This is because the admitted prior works fine.
- b. <u>As per claim 4, 11 or 17</u>:

Novis teaches that his target means 14 comprises a biometric device [col. 3, lines 41-44].

c. As per claims 32 and 31: A LAS. Contracting the starting of the starting of

These claims do not teach or cover more than those which are covered by claims

1, 8 and 14 and thus are similarly rejected with the same rationale applied

thereto.

d. <u>As per Jaims 28, 29 and 30</u>:

Page 7

, )

Using the above rejected claims 1, 8 and 14 with a host computer device would

have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art. This is because

peripheral devices are to be use with host device.

9. Claims 6, 7, and 13 are objected to as they depend on rejected claims.

10. The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure.

11. Any response to this action should be mailed to:

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Washington, D.C. 20231

or faxed to:

(703) 308-9051, (for formal communications intended for entry)

Or:

(703)305-9724 (for informal or draft communications, please label "PROPOSED" or "DRAFT")

Hand-delivered responses should be brought to Crystal Park II, 2121 Crystal Drive, Arlington. VA., Sixth Floor (Receptionist).

12. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Examiner Ly Hua whose telephone number is (703) 305-9684. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday to Friday from 9:30 AM to 6:00 PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Mr. Robert W. Beausoliel, Jr., can be reached on (703) 305-9713. The fax phone number for this Group is (703) 305-9724.

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the Group receptionist whose telephone number is (703) 305-3900 $\rho$ 

્ય કરવેલા કરવાલી છે.

paul Che

' LY V. HUA PATENT EXAMINER ART UNIT 2785

L. Hua November 20, 1998

,	•			•				
	Notice of Refere	ences Cited		Application No. DS/869.30 Examiner Ly Hece	Applicant(s)	BIALIC Group Art Unit 2785	C K Page	ET A
		, ,	U.S. PAT	ENT DOCUMENTS		·		·
*	DOCUMENT NO.	DATE		NAME		ſ	CLASS	SUBCLASS
A	5,770,849	6/98	Novi	S ET AL.		· · · · ·	235	492
8	5,473,692	12/95	DAUI	'S			380	25
¢	5,546,463	8/96	CAPI	ITO ET	AL.		380	25
D	5.282,247	194	MCI	EAN ET	- 41		380	4
E	5,191,611	3/93	LAI	NG			390	25
F	5,537,544	7/91	·MOR	ISAWA F	T AL		395	188.2
G	5,742,683	4/98	LEE	E ET AL	•		380	23
н	5,491,827	2/96	HOL	TEY			395	800
1	5,442,704	8/95	HO	LTEY			380	23
J			•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
к				•			····	
L								
М								
	······	r	FOREIGN P	ATENT DOCUMENTS				••••••
۲ 	DOCUMENT NO.	DATE	COU	NTRY	NAME		CLASS	SUBCLASS
N								
10								
P								
					·····		•.•••	
R								
S 			<u></u>					
<u> </u>	L						·	<u>_</u>
-			NON-PAT	ENT DOCUMENTS				
+-		OCUMENT (Includir	ng Author, Tit	le, Source, and Pertinen	t Pages)			DATE
U								
+-					<u></u>			
V								
	·					19210-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-19-		
w								
		neri i g						
1								
X								

i de la companya de l La companya de la comp 310

.

\* A copy of this reference is not being funished with this Office action. (See Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, Section 707.05(a).)

107

٠

t streets is

ø Part of Paper No.

-4

÷

Transaction History Date 1999-03-15 Date information retrieved from USPTO Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system records at www.uspto.gov GAU 27-85\$ Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004 TATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE IN THE RECEIVED March 11, 1999 MAR 2 4 1999 Assistant Commissioner for Patents (; Washington, D.C. 20231 Grown 2700 Applicants: William P. Bialick et al, Re: Assignee: Spyrus, Inc. Peripheral Device With Integrated Security Title: Functionality Serial No.: 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997 Examiner: L. Hua Group Art Unit: 2785 Transmitted herewith are the following documents in the aboveidentified application: Response to Office Action (16 pages); (2) Check for \$63.00 (Check No. 1385); (3) Return receipt postcard; and (4) This sheet in duplicate. The fee is calculated as follows (small entity status is claimed): CLAIMS AS AMENDED Claims Highest After Number Additional Amendment Paid For <u>Claims</u> Rate Fee Total Claims: 39 32 7 х \$9 = \$ 63.00 Independent Claims: 8 12 = 0 Х \$38 = \$ 0.00 First filing of one or more multiple dependent claims (\$270 total fee) Ś 0.00 \_ Fee for Petition for Extension of Time (\_\_\_\_ \_ months) \$ 0.00 TOTAL FEE: Ś 63.00 I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>March 11, 1999</u>. Respectfully submitted, and Narid R. kraham David R. Graham 3-11-99 Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants 1337 Chewpon Ave. Milpitas, CA 95035 Tel. No.: (408) 9 (408) 945-9912
IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE Applicants: William P. Bialick et al. . 1 Assignee: • Per pheral Device With Integrated Security Spyrus, Inc. Title: RECEIVE MAR 2 4 1999 3 Filed: June 4, 1997 Serial 0.84 69,305 Examiner: & TRAW Hua Group Art Unit: 2785 Group 2700 Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004 Milpitas, California March 11, 1999 Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231 RESPONSE TO OFFICE ACTION sir: Please enter the following response to the Office Action dated December 11, 1998, in the above-identified application. IN THE SPECIFICATION At page 5, line 19, delete "or" and substitute --,--; line 20, after "device" (first occurrence), insert - or input to the peripheral device by a person -. At page 8, line 4, delete "computational" and substitute --computing--; line 5, delete "computational" and substitute --computing--.; 03/17/1999 RHAGAT 00000045 08869305 01 F\$:203 63.00 00 - 1 i., 1 i entre

line 10, delete "another" and substitute -- the peripheral--; after "device" (second occurrence), insert -- 302--; line 11, delete "another" and substitute -- the peripheral--; after "device" (first occurrence), insert -- 302--. At page 9, line 22, delete "3A" and substitute -- 3B--. At page 13, line 5, delete "an". At page 14, line 32, after ")", insert -- to enable performance of security operations -. At page 16, line 21, delete "colloquially" and substitute --informally--. At page 20, line 31, delete "implemented" and substitute --operated--. At page 22, line 9, delete "This" and substitute --The--; line 18, delete "peripheral" and substitute --target--; line 30, after "device.", insert - (Of course, in this case, security functionality, i.e., user authentication, is used as part of the step 715) At page 24, line 18, after "below", insert -- (see FIGS. 8, 9A and 9B)--. - 2 -

110

At page 28, line 13, delete "be"; after "also", insert --be--; line 18, delete "with" and substitute --to provide--. At page 29, line 5, after "806", insert --,--. At page 33, line 7, delete "a" (first occurrence) and substitute --the--.

At page 34, line 18, delete "peripheral".

IN THE CLAIMS

Please cancel Claims 1, 19, 21, 24, 27 and 28.

Please amend the claims as follows:

2. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [1]  $\not {\underline{\aleph}}$ , wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

3. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [1]  $\not B$ , wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

4. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [1]  $\oint$ , wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

111

- 3 -

5. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [1] 2, wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

/ \$\nother . (Amended) A peripheral device [as in Claim 1],
[further] comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device:

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing
device;

means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device; and

means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means.

(Amended) A peripheral device [as in Claim 1], [further] comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

112

/|||

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device:

means for operably connecting the security means and/or the target means to the host computing device in response to an instruction from the host computing device; and

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the <u>target</u> means [for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device].

13. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim 8, further comprising means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the <u>target</u> means [for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device].

#14. (Amended) A peripheral device, comprising: security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

113

5 -

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the <u>target</u> means [for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device].

1326. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [1] 32, wherein the solid-state disk storage device comprises an ATA format flash disk drive.

The second secon

16 28. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [21] 26, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless LAN transceiver.

111

g025. (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim  $[24]^{n_{11}}$ , wherein the biometric device comprises a fingerprint scanning device.

 $\frac{9}{26}$ . (Amended) A peripheral device as in Claim [24]  $\frac{19}{11}$ , wherein the biometric device comprises a retinal scanning device.

37 20. (Amended) A data security system, comprising:

a host computing device including one or more device interfaces adapted to enable communication with another device;

a peripheral device, comprising:

security means for enabling one or more security operations to be performed on data;

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device; and

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device; and

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the <u>target</u> means [for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device].

115

estimate fed**7** - d'al ter

39.32. (Amended) For use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the steps of:

<u>communicating with the</u> [receiving an instruction from a] host computing device <u>to exchange data between the host</u> <u>computing device and</u> [regarding operation of] the peripheral device; [and]

[performng] <u>performing one or more</u> security operations and the defined interaction [in response to the instruction from the host computing device] <u>on the exchanged data; and</u>

mediating communication of the exchanged data between the host computing device and the peripheral device so that the exchanged data must first pass through means for performing the one or more security operations.

Please enter the following new claims:

10

 $7_{23}$ . (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 7, wherein the target means comprises means for non-volatilely storing data.

3. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 7, wherein the target means comprises means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device.

9 35. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 7, wherein the target means comprises a biometric device.

- 8 -

 $1^{0}_{3}$ . (New) A peripheral device as in Claim  $\cancel{1}$ , wherein the target means comprises means for communicating with a smart card.

 $13_{37}$ . (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 3, wherein the means for non-volatilely storing data further comprises a solid-state disk storage device.

15 36. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 10, wherein the means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device further comprises wireless communication means.

25 35. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 15, wherein the means for non-volatilely storing data further comprises a solidstate disk storage device.

2626New) A peripheral device as in Claim 32, wherein the solid-state disk storage device comprises an ATA format flash disk drive.

48 41. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 16, wherein the means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device further comprises wireless communication means.

3942. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 41, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless modem.

- 9 -

 $3_{43}$ . (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 41, wherein the wireless communication means comprises a wireless LAN transceiver.

1

AIZ

 $33_{44}$ . (New) A peripheral device as in Claim  $37_{4}$ , wherein the biometric device comprises a fingerprint scanning device.

34 36. (New) A peripheral device as in Claim 17, wherein the biometric device comprises a retinal scanning device.

IN THE ABSTRACT

Line 18, after "device" (second occurrence), insert

e 10, alter device (becond occarrence), indere

input to the peripheral device by a person -.

Line 26, delete "," (third occurrence). Line 27, delete "as described further below".

Line 17, delete "or" and substitute --,--.

#### REMARKS

Claims 1-32 were filed and are pending. Claims 2, 3, 5, 9, 10, 12, 15, 16, 18-23 and 27 were not examined, since directed to species that were not provisionally elected for examination by the Examiner. Claims 24-26 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 102. Claims 1, 4, 8, 11, 14, 17 and 28-32 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103. Claims 6, 7 and 13 were objected to as dependent on a rejected claim. Claims 1, 19, 21, 24, 27 and 28 have been canceled. Claims 2-7, 13, 14, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26, 30 and 32 have been amended. Claims 33-45 have been added.

- 1.0 -

Reconsideration and allowance of Claims 2-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26,

A STATES F

Ć

29-32, and allowance of Claims 33-45 is requested.

In the Office Action, the Examiner stated:

This application contains claims directed to the following patentably distinct species of the claimed invention: <u>first, second, third, fourth species of target means</u>.

Applicant is required under 35 U.S.C. 121 to elect a single disclosed species for prosecution on the merits to which the claims shall be restricted if no generic claim is finally held to be allowable. Currently, the target means is generic.

Applicant is advised that a response to this requirement must include an identification of the species that is elected consonant with this requirement, and a listing of all claims readable thereon, including any claims subsequently added. An argument that a claim is allowable or that all claims are generic is considered nonresponsive unless accompanied by an election.

Upon the allowance of a generic claim, applicant will be entitled to consideration of claims to additional species which are written in dependent form or otherwise include all the limitations of an allowed generic claim as provided by 37 CFR 1.141. If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which are readable upon the elected species. MPEP § 809.02(a).

Should applicant traverse on the ground that the species are not patentably distinct, applicant should submit evidence or identify such evidence now of record showing the species to be obvious variants or clearly admit on the record that this is the case. In either instance, if the examiner finds one of the inventions unpatentable over the prior art, the evidence or admission may be used in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) of the other invention.

During a telephone conversation with Mr. [D]avid R. Graham (Reg. No. 36,160 [sic]) on November 6, 1998, a provisional election was made with traverse to prosecute the invention of the first species, claims, 1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14, 17, 24-26, 28, 29, 30, 31 and 32. Affirmation of this election must be made by applicant in responding to this Office action. Claims 2, 3, 5, 20, 9, 10, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19-20, 21-23 and 27

- 11 -

are withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner, 37 CFR 1.142(b), as being drawn to a nonelected invention.

Applicants confirm the provisional election to prosecute the invention of the first species (i.e., the species in which the target means can be embodied by a biometric device), originally pending claims 1, 4, 6-8, 11, 13, 14, 17, 24-26 and 28-32 readable thereon. Applicants have added Claims 33-45. Claims 35, 44 and 45 are also readable on the invention of the elected first species. Claims 33, 37, 39 and 40 are readable on the invention of the species in which the target means can be embodied by means for non-volatilely storing data. Claims 34, 38 and 41-43 are readable on the invention of the species in which the target means can be embodied by means for enabling communication between the host computing device and a remote device. Claim 36 is readable on the invention of the species in which the target means can be embodied by means for communicating with a smart card.

However, in view of the above amendments and the remarks below, Applicants contend that all pending claims, including those readable on non-elected species, are either an allowable generic claim (i.e., Claims 6, 7, 8, 13, 14 and 29-32) or are dependent on an allowable generic claim (i.e., Claims 2-5, 9-12, 15-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26 and 33-45).

The Examiner further stated in the Office Action that "Claims 6, 7, and 13 are objected to as they depend on rejected claims," i.e., Claims 6, 7 and 13 would be allowable if rewritten in independent form to include the limitations of the base claim

- 12 -

and any intervening claims. Claims 6, 7 and 13 have been rewritten in this manner and are therefore in condition for allowance. (Claims 7 and 13 have also been amended to simplify a recitation of the target means.) Further, Claims 2-5 have each been amended to depend upon Claim 6 and are therefore allowable as dependent on an allowable claim. Additionally, new Claims 33-36 each depend upon Claim 7 and are therefore allowable as dependent on an allowable claim.

Before amendment, Claim 6 recited "[a] peripheral device as in Claim 1, further comprising means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means" (emphasis added). Since Claim 1 was rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as unpatentable over Novis et al., the aboveemphasized recitation in Claim 6 is apparently the basis for allowability of Claim 6. Claims 8 and 29 were also rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as unpatentable over Novis et al. However, Claims 8 and 29, like Claim 6, recite "means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means." Therefore, Applicants submit that Claims 8 and 29, like Claim 6, are allowable. Further, Claims 9-12, which each depend upon Claim 8, are therefore allowable as dependent on an allowable claim. Additionally, Claims 20, 22, 23, 25 and 26, which have been amended so that each depends either directly or indirectly upon one of Claims 9-11, are also allowable as dependent on an allowable claim. Similarly, new

- 13 -

Claims 37 and 38, which depend upon Claims 9 and 10, respectively, are allowable as dependent on an allowable claim.

Before amendment, Claim 7 recited "[a] peripheral device as in Claim 1, further comprising means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device" (emphasis added). Since Claim 1 was rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as unpatentable over Novis et al., the aboveemphasized recitation in Claim 7 is apparently the basis for allowability of Claim 7. Claims 14 and 30 were also rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as unpatentable over Novis et al. However, before amendment, Claims 14 and 30, like Claim 7, recited "means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device." (Claims 14 and 30 have been amended, like Claim 7, to simplify a recitation of the target means.) Therefore, Applicants submit that Claims 14 and 30, like Claim 7, are allowable. Further, Claims 15-18, which each depend upon Claim 14, are therefore allowable as dependent on an allowable claim. Additionally, new Claims 39-45, which each depend upon one of Claims 15-17 either directly or indirectly, are also allowable as dependent on an allowable claim.

122

a film an the state of the search

Claim 31 recites "[f]or use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the steps of: receiving a request from a host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device; and <u>providing to the host computing device, in response to the</u> <u>request, information regarding the type of the defined</u> <u>interaction (emphasis added). The above-emphasized part of</u> Claim 31 recites functionality similar to that of allowable Claims 7, 13, 14 and 30. Therefore, Applicants submit that Claim 31 is allowable.

As amended, Claim 32 recites "[f]or use in a peripheral device adapted for communication with a host computing device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and interaction with a host computing device in a defined way, a method comprising the steps of: communicating with the host computing device to exchange data between the host computing device and the peripheral device; performing one or more security operations and the defined interaction on the exchanged data; and <u>mediating communication of the exchanged data between the host</u> <u>computing device and the peripheral device so that the exchanged</u> <u>data must first pass through means for performing the one or more</u> <u>security operations</u>" (emphasis added). The above-emphasized part of Claim 32 recites functionality similar to that of allowable Claims 6, 8 and 29. Therefore, Applicants submit that Claim 32 is allowable.

- 15 -

Claims 1, 19, 21, 24, 27 and 28 have been canceled, thereby obviating the rejections of those claims.

In view of the foregoing, Applicants submit that Claims 2-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26 and 29-41 are in condition for allowance.

## CONCLUSION

Claims 1-32 were pending. Claims 2, 3, 5, 9, 10, 12, 15, 16, 18-23 and 27 were not examined, since directed to species that were not provisionally elected for examination by the Examiner. Claims 1, 4, 8, 11, 14, 17, 24-26 and 28-32 were rejected. Claims 6, 7 and 13 were objected to. Claims 1, 19, 21, 24, 27 and 28 have been canceled. Claims 2-7, 13, 14, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26, 30 and 32 have been amended. Claims 33-45 have been added. In view of the foregoing, it is requested that Claims 2-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26 and 29-45 be allowed. If the Examiner wishes to discuss any aspect of this application, the Examiner is invited to telephone Applicants' undersigned attorney at (408) 945-9912.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>March 11, 1999</u>.

3-11-99 David R. Kraham

Respectfully submitted,

and R. Seaham

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

- 16 -

8/869,305

Grugu85

Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004

MAR' 1 8 1999

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

March 12, 1999

ASSistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Re: Applicants: William P. Bialick et al. Assignee: Spyrus, Inc. Title: Peripheral Device With Integrated Securi RECEIVED Functionality Serial No.: 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997 Examiner: L. Hua Group Art Unit: 2785 Group 2700

Transmitted herewith are the following documents in the aboveidentified application:

(1) Supplemental Response to Office Action (3 pages); and

(2) Return receipt postcard.

The fee is calculated as follows (small entity status is claimed):

## CLAIMS AS AMENDED

	Claims After Amendment	Highest Number Paid For	Additic Claims	onal	Rate		Fee
Total Claims:	39 -	39 =	0	x	\$9	= \$	0.00
Independent Clai	ms: 9 -	12 =	0	Х	\$38	= \$	0.00
First filing dependent cl	of one or : aims (\$270	more multi total fee)	ple	!		\$	0.00
Fee for Peti	tion for Ex	tension of	Time (_	mc	onths)	\$	0.00
TOTAL FEE:						Ś	0.00

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>March 12, 1999</u>.

3-12-99 David R. Kicham

Respectfully submitted,

David R. Graham David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants 1337 Chewpon Ave. Milpitas, CA 95035 Tel. No.: (408) 945-9912

125

<u>i M</u>r

1	
01	
MAR 1	8 1999 (T) IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FIEND	Appricants: William P. Bialick et al.
	Autassignee: Spyrus, Inc.
	Title: Peripheral Device with Integrated Security Functionality
	Serial No.: 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997
	Examiner: L. Hua Group Art Unit: 2785
	Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004
	Milpitas, California March 12, 1999
.h	Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231
W 169	SUPPLEMENTAL RESPONSE TO OFFICE ACTION
NUN.	Sir:
	Please enter the following supplemental response to the
	Office Action dated December 11, 1998, in the above-identified
	application. A Response to Office Action was previously
	submitted by Applicants on March 11, 1999 (hereinafter, the
	"previous Office Action response"), responding to that Office
	Action.
	IN THE CLAIMS
, 	Please amend the claims as follows:
	$2^{2}$ 13. (Twice Amended) A peripheral device [as in Claim 8],
	[further] comprising:
15	security means for enabling one or more security
	operations to be performed on data;
	- 1 -

target means for enabling a defined interaction with a host computing device;

means for enabling communication between the security means and the target means;

means for enabling communication with a host computing device;

means for mediating communication of data between the host computing device and the target means so that the communicated data must first pass through the security means: and

means for providing to a host computing device, in response to a request from the host computing device for information regarding the type of the peripheral device, information regarding the function of the target means.

#### <u>REMARKS</u>

In the previous Office Action response, Applicants stated that Claim 13 had been rewritten in independent form to include the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims and was, therefore, in condition for allowance. However, Claim 13 was inadvertently not amended in that way in the previous Office Action response. Claim 13 has been amended herein as indicated above.

- 2 -

Claims 2-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26 and 29-45 are pending. Allowance of Claims 2-18, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26 and 29-45 is requested. If the Examiner wishes to discuss any aspect of this application, the Examiner is invited to telephone Applicants' undersigned attorney at (408) 945-9912.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>March 12, 1999</u>.

3-12-99 David P. Kulam

Respectfully submitted,

David R. Kuham

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

- 3 -

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK William P. Bialick et al. Applicar 0 yrus, Inc. Assiq RECEIVED Title ripheral Device With Integrated Security APR 0 5 1999 unctionality AKOFFIC Group 2700 Serial No. 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997 Group Art Unit: 2785 Examiner: L. Hua SPY-004 Attorney Docket NO. : Milpitas, California March 24, 1999

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT WITH CERTIFICATION UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.97(e)(2)

Sir:

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, § 1.97 and § 1.98, Applicants bring the documents (copies enclosed) listed on the enclosed Form PTO-1449 to the Examiner's attention in the above-identified application. Citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the documents are necessarily prior art with respect to the instant invention. Also, citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the information disclosed therein is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b).

The undersigned hereby certifies in accordance with 37 CFR \$1.97(e)(2) that no item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application

- 1 -

or, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>March 24, 1999</u>. <u>3-24-99</u> <u>Jate</u> Signature

Respectfully submitted,

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

2. B

3 States and States

					•			
						•. 4		
				<b>、</b>	part or	#9		
					0		SHEE	T 1 OF
U.S.	DEPT OF COMMERCE	- PATENT ۲	RADEMARK OFFICE	ATTORNEY DOCKET N	U.: SPY-004	SERIAL NO.	: 08/86	9,305
	INFORMATION	sheets if nec	(AIIUN	APPLICANTS: Will	1am P. Bialici	cet al.		785
	(036 3646131			FILING DATE. JUIN	e 4, 1777	GROUP ART		
					01.405		-11100	
ITIALS	PALENI NUMBER		INVENTOR(S)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	UA1E
nd.	5,694,335	12/2/97	Hollenberg		364	514	3/12/96	
ur.	5,297,206	3/22/94	Orton		380	30 REC	<u>_19\7/83</u>	<b>D</b>
				······································		APR	<u>ון ג</u> ו	9
	6	TPE					n 970	0
··· , · · ···		0 1099 0	-			Grou	₩ <del>6</del> .75	
	M	K J C E						
	E.	a constant						
		THAD						
			FOREIGN PATE	ENT DOCUMENTS		•		
AMINER'S	DOCUMENT	PUBLICATION DATE	NAME(S)		COUNTRY		TRANS	ATION?
							TES	NO
<u> </u>								
								2
		СОМ	MONLY OWNED, CO-PENDIN	G U.S. PATENT APPLICA	TIONS			
AMINER'S	SERIAL NUMBER		APPLICANT(S)		CLASS	SUB-CLASS	FILING	DATE
ITTALS		DUCKET NU.					<u> </u>	
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
			OTHER D	OCUMENTS				
AMINER'S	AUTHOR(S), TI	LE, DATE, PERT	INENT PAGES, ETC.		· ·			
111415			·····			····		·······
								<u> </u>
					<u></u>	- 1 40 km		
		,						
								<del>,</del>
	Lu V. He	a		6/2	1999			

; {

	BEST COPY
08/869,305	UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Patent and Trademark Office
TATES OF UT	Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS Washington, D.C. 20231
APPLICATION NUMBER FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT ATTORNEY DOCKEY NO.
08/869.305 06/04/97 BIALICK	MEXAMINER SPY
LM21 DAVID R GRAHAM 1337 CHEMPON AVENUE MILPITAS CA 95035	ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER HUGA, L. /D DATE MAILED
This is a communication from the examiner in charge of your application	06/07/99
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS	
NOTICE OF ALL	OWABILITY
All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR RE previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due or other ap	EMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or propriate communication will be mailed in due course.
This communication is responsive to <u>upplicant &amp; Cor</u>	respondence feled on March, 15, 18,3
The allowed claim(s) is/are $2-20$ , $20$ , $22$ , $23$ ,	25, 26, and 29-45. 1977.
The drawings filed on are acceptab	le.
Acknowledgement is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.	5.C. § 119(a)-(d).
All Some* J None of the CERTIFIED copies of the priori	ty documents have been
	<ul> <li>A start of the sta</li></ul>
received in Application No. (Series Code/Serial Number)	······································
Certified copies not received:	Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
Acknowledgement is made of a claim for domestic priority under 35	U.S.C. § 119(e).
A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR RESPONSE to comply wit FROM THE "DATE MAILED" of this Office action. Failure to timely comp time may be obtained under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).	h the requirements noted below is set to EXPIRE THREE MONTHS ply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application. Extensions of
Note the attached EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF INFO declaration is deficient. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION	DRMAL APPLICATION, PTO-152, which discloses that the cath or IS REQUIRED.
P Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAWINGS	۵.
because the originally filed drawings were declared by applicant to	be informal.
including changes required by the Notice of Draftperson's Patent	Drawing Review, PTO-948, attached hereto or to Paper No
including changes required by the proposed drawing correction fill by the examiner.	ed on, which has been approved
including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment	ent/Comment.
Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1 The drawings should be filed as a separate paper with a transmit	.84(c)) should be written on the reverse side of the drawings. tal letter addressed to the Official Draftperson.
Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT Any response to this letter should include, in the upper right hand corne If applicant has received a Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due, the ALLOWANCE should also be included.	FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL. r, the APPLICATION NUMBER (SERIES CODE/SERIAL NUMBER). ISSUE BATCH NUMBER and DATE of the NOTICE OF
Attachment(s)	
Notice of References Cited, PTO-892	bendedless
🗹 Information Disclosure Statement(s), PTO-1449, Paper No(s).	LY V. HUA
□ Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review, PTO-948	PRIMARY EXAMINER
Notice of Informal Patent Application, PTO-152	
Interview Summary, PTO-413	
Examiner's Amendment/Comment	
Staminer's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biol	ogical Material
Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance	

į



UNITED ST. ..... EPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Patent and Trademark Office

## NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE FEE DUE

1 Cl. Land of

, DAVEU (P. P.C.) (P. P.C.) FETCZ (C.N. RECOLL ANT MUS MELTET (P. C.N. STOCK)

APPLIC	CATION NO.	FILING DATE	TOTAL CLAIMS	EXAMINER AND GROUP ART UNIT		DATE MAILED
	08128839 (461)	a Heating 2022	BOR	10Mi - 1	27,15	1676279
First Named Applicant	blölle.		:	edd) egiller færm och, s	the films	£.,

ATTY'S DOCKET NO.	CLASS-SUBCLASE	BATCH NO.	APPLN	N. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	FEE DUE	DATE DUE
19 - 1949 V - 10	0.4 ŽT	з тав, нов	1414	tirdt.a	et 7 – 7655	rah si (n	) UN 67509

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED.

THE ISSUE FEE MUST BE PAID WITHIN <u>THREE MONTHS</u> FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. <u>THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED.</u>

## HOW TO RESPOND TO THIS NOTICE:

above.

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above. If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:	If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:
A. If the status is changed, pay twice the amount of the FEE DUE shown above and notify the Patent and	A. Pay FEE DUE shown above, or

- FEE DUE shown above and notify the Patent and Trademark Office of the change in status, or B. If the status is the same, pay the FEE DUE shown
- B. File verified statement of Small Entity Status before, or with, payment of 1/2 the FEE DUE shown above.
- II. Part B-Issue Fee Transmittal should be completed and returned to the Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) with your ISSUE FEE. Even if the ISSUE FEE has already been paid by charge to deposit account, Part B Issue Fee Transmittal should be completed and returned. If you are charging the ISSUE FEE to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B-Issue Fee Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted.
- III. All communications regarding this application must give application number and batch number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Box ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

## PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE COPY

Transaction History Date 1999-06-23 Date information retrieved from USPTO Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system records at www.uspto.gov

7660	Mortha -	
2785		
<u>IN THE</u>	UNITED STATES	PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
Applicants:	William P. Bia	lick et al.
Assigneev P 2	Spyrus, Inc.	
Title: 111 23 1899	Peripheral Dev: Functionality	ice With Integrated Security
Serial No.:	08/869,305	Filed: June 4, 1997
Examiner:	L. Hua	Group Art Unit: 2785
Batch No.:	U04	Allowed: June 7, 1999
Attorney Docke	t No.: SPY-004	
		Milnitas California

Box Issue Fee Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

# RECEIVED

June 16, 1999

SUBMISSION OF FORMAL DRAWINGS

Publishing Division 11

**JUN 2 4 1999** 

Sir:

In a Notice of Allowability dated June 7, 1999, in the above-identified application, Applicants were required to submit formal drawings. Applicants submit herewith nine (9) sheets of formal drawings consisting of FIGS. 1, 2, 3A, 3B, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9A and 9B. The Official Draftsperson is requested to telephone Applicants' undersigned attorney at (408) 945-9912 if there are any questions or problems with the enclosed formal drawings.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>June 16, 1999</u>.

6-16-99 David R. kraham.

Respectfully submitted,

K and David R. Graham

Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants





FIG. 2 (PRIOR ART)









FIG. 5













9/9

<u>IN THE</u>	UNITED STATES	PATENT AND TRAD	EMARK OFFIC	E
Applicants:	William P. Bia	lick et al.		OIPE
Assignee:	Spyrus, Inc.			SEP 1 3 1999
Title:	Peripheral Dev Functionality	ice With Integra	ted Securi	ty FRADEMARY
Serial No.:	08/869,305	Filed: June 4,	1997	
Examiner:	L. Hua	Group Art Unit:	2785	RECEIVED
Batch No.:	U04	Allowed: June	7, 1999	DEC 07 1999
Attorney Docke	t No.: SPY-004			Group 2700
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Milpitas, September	California 7, 1999

Box Issue Fee Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

PETITION UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d)(2)

Sir:

In view of the allowed status of the above-referenced application, pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(d)(2), Applicants hereby request consideration of the accompanying Information Disclosure Statement. Enclosed is a check (Check No. 1461) for \$130.00 for the petition fee under 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(i). This Petition is being submitted in duplicate.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>September 7, 1999</u>.

9-7-99 Aquid R. Sulam

Respectfully submitted,

• 1

David R. Graham

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

144

- 1 -
IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE Applicants: William P. Bialick et al. Ó Assignee: SEP 1 3 1998 Spyrus, Inc. Title: Peripheral Device With Integrated Secur Functionality DEC 0 7 1999 Serial No.: 08/869,305 Filed: June 4, 1997 Group 2700 Examiner: L. Hua Group Art Unit: 2785 Batch No .: U04 Allowed: June 7, 1999 STEP 1 & 1999 Attorney Docket No.: SPY-004 -\_---------Milpitas, California September 7, 1999 RECEIVED Box Issue Fee

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

SEP 1 5 1999 INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT Fublishing Division WITH CERTIFICATION UNDER 37 C.F.R.  $\$1.97(e)(\vec{2})$ 13

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.56, § 1.97 and § 1.98, Applicants bring the documents (copies enclosed) listed on the enclosed Form PTO-1449 to the Examiner's attention in the above-identified application. Citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the documents are necessarily prior art with respect to the instant invention. Also, citation of these documents shall not be construed as an admission that the information disclosed therein is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.56(b) 🕏

The undersigned hereby certifies in accordance with 7 CFR \$1.97(e)(2) that no item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication

- 1 -

**NATIFICA** 

14/19991 T:122

from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement, except for U.S. Patent No. 4,709,136 to Watanabe.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231, on <u>September 7, 1999</u>.

<u>9-1-99</u> David & Brahum

Respectfully submitted and certified by,

David R. Keraham

David R. Graham Reg. No. 36,150 Attorney for Applicants

- 2 -

		· .						
				·				
		•						
u.s.	PEPT OF COMMERCE	- PATENT A		ATTORNEY DOCKET N	0 · SPY-004	SERIAL NO	· 08/869	1 OF
	INFORMATION	DISCLOSURE CI	TATION	APPLICANTS: Will	iam P. Bialick	et al		, 305
	(Use several	sheets if nec	essary)	FILING DATE: Jun	e 4. 1997	GROUP ART		85
AMINER'S				PATENTS	CLASS	SUB-CLASS		AT 5
ITIALS			INVENTOR (3)			30B-CLA33		~ · · C
ffal_	4,709,136	11/24/67	Watanabe	SFP 1 3 1999 8	235	379	06/03/86	
Kull_	5,878,142	3/2/99	Caputo et al.	E	38D	<u>,</u> 25	6/10/96	
WQ	5,790,674	8/4/98	Houvener et al.	TA TRADEMA	380	23	7/19/96	
WR_	5,610,981	3/11/97	Mooney et al.		380	25	2/28/95	
KUR	5,524,134	6/4/96	Gustafson et al.	Taisan - ta anna - Miller y - e ann	379	58	4/28/94	:
KUR	5,828,832	10/27/98	Holden et al.		395	187.01	7/30/96	
WU_	5,640,302	6/17/97	Kikinis	<u></u>	361	687	3/11/96	
				······································				
····						HECE	IVED	
*.		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				DEC O	1999	
			<u></u>			+		
			1	x		Groun	p700_	
		T	FOREIGN PAI					
NITIALS	NUMBER	DATE	NAME(S)		JURISDICT	LON	TRANSLA	110
			+				YES	NC
·······							+-+	
	<u> </u>						++	
					·		+-+	
	1	1					+	
					- <u>I</u>		┸╼╦╌╾╇	, <del>,.</del>
VANTNEDIC								
NITIALS	AUTHUR(5), [1]	LC, PUBLICATIO	IN, UAIE, PERIINENI PA	NGCO, EIL.				
	1	diana any amin'ny fisiana amin'ny fisiana amin'ny fisiana amin'ny fisiana amin'ny fisiana amin'ny fisiana amin'		<u> </u>				
		<u></u>	1		· · · · ·			
							······································	
				, <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b> _, <b>_</b> , <b>_</b>				
		and the second se			. 7			
	1. 11	11			1. Inn			
XAMINER:	Ly V.	Hua		DATE CONSIDERED:	12/14/99			

, L

1

.

		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
				BEST	ГСОРҮ
	•				
		2 4 4		•	
		κ.			
		na john na sinterne na sinterne		$= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\Phi_{i} \cdot i_{i}) + \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\Phi_{i} \cdot i_{i})$	
		PART B-ISSUE	FEE TRAN	SMF	:
Complete and mail this form, to	gether with applicable i	fees, to: Box ISS	UE FEE	(0) °C1	1 ad
		Assista Washin	nt Commissi gton, D.C. 20	onerfor) /s (SEP 1 4 1999 5	B
MAILING INSTRUCTIONS: This for	m should be used for trai	namitting the ISSUE F	EE. Blocks 1	ALLE TRADE ALLE	
through 4 should be completed where Receipt, the Patent, advance orders	appropriate. All further con and notification of mainten	rrespondence including ance fees will be maile	g the Issue Fee d to the current	mailings of the issue Fee Transmittai. This centre for any other accompanying papers. Each addition	be used for domestic ficate cannot be used anal paper, such as an
specifying a new correspondence a	ddress; and/or (b) indicati	ng a separate "FEE /	ADDRESS" for	assignment or formal drawing, must have its own	certificate of mailing.
CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS	(Note: Legibly mark-up with any	corrections or use Block 1)	······································	I hereby certify that this issue Fee Transmittal is the Linited States Postal Sendre with sufficient	being deposited with
<b></b>	m. A.1. 1. J. 1. J.	LM21/	0607	mail in an envelope addressed to the Box Issue F the date indicated below.	Fee address above on
1337 CHEW	YON AVENUE				
MULPITAS (	CA 95005			David P Graham	(Depositor's name)
				David R. Ersham	(Signature)
			11	September 7, 1999	(Daie)
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	TOTAL CLAIMS		EXAMINER AND GROUP ART UNIT	DATE MAILED
087869,30	5 06704797	039	HUA, L	. 2785	06/07/99
First Named BIALICK	4	35 U	ISC 154	(b) term ext. = 0 Da	ays.
TITLE OF PERIPHERAL	DEVICE WITH	INTEGRATED	SECURI	TY FUNCTIONALITY	
		, the	•	· · .; /	
ATTY'S DOCKET NO.	CLASS-SUBCLASS	BATCH NO			
7 SPV-004	71:327	1 000 100			0.9707799
Change of correspondence address Use of PTO form(s) and Customer     Change of correspondence address	s of indication of "Fee Addre Number are recommended, ess (or Change of Correspo	iss" (37 CFH 1.363). but not required. ndance Address form	2. For printing (1) the names attorneys or a the name of	y on the patient front page, list a of up to 3 registered patent <u>1 David R</u> . agents OR, atternatively, (2) a single firm (having as a	Graham .
PTO/SB/122) attached.	Addrage <sup>®</sup> Indication form D		and the name	igistered attorney or agent) 2 s of up to 2 registered patent	
	a Address indication form P	(0/30/47) Allachied.	name will be p	gents. It no name is listed, no orinted. 3	
3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDEN	CE DATA TO BE PRINTED	ON THE PATENT (print	or type)	4a. The following fees are enclosed (make check p	ayable to Commissioner
Inclusion of assignee data is only in the PTO or is being submitted und	ee is identified below, no ass approplate when an assignm ar separate cover . Completi	signee data will appear o ent has been previously ion of this form is NOT a	submitted to	of Patents and Trademarks): X Issue Fee	
filing an assignment.	rus. The			X Advance Order - # of Coples	
(B) RESIDENCE (CITY & STATE	OR COUNTRY Cant	a Clara Co	liford	4b. The following fees or deficiency in these fees a	hould be charged to:
Please check the anomaliate see	nee category indicated helo		the patent)	(ENCLOSE AN EXTRA COPY OF THIS FORM	± U A)
individual X corporation	or other private group entity	government		L. Issue Fee  Advance Order - # of Copies	
The COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS	AND TRADEMARKS IS req	uested to apply the Issu	e Fee to the app	plication identified above. 응급	
Hand	R. Kraham	(Date)	7-99	305 00	
NOTE; The Issue Fee will not be according or agent; or the assignee or other part	pted from anyone other that ty in interest as shown by the	n the applicant; a registe a records of the Patent a	red attorney ind	BECEIVED	
Trademark Office.	m is astimated to take 0.0		ne will vend		
depending on the needs of the indition to complete this form should be a	vidual case. Any commen	ts on the amount of tin	ne required	SEP 1 7 1999	,
Office, Washington, D.C. 20231. 1	O NOT SEND FEES OR	COMPLETED FORM	S TO THIS	Publishing Divisiun	
Patenta, Washington D.C. 20231		· Ju, riealatanit UQHIIM		Jorres/Allowed Files (/.	
Under the Paperwork Reduction A of information unless it displays a	st of 1995, no persons are valid OMB control number	required to respond to .	a collection	5 3H	

		. à			
	•				
		· · · · · · · ·			•
		ANT MENT OF COLLEGE	UNITED STAT		NT OF COMMERCE
		And the states of the states o	UNITED STAT Patent and Tra Address: COMMIS Washing	ESL ARTMEN ademark Office SSIONER OF PATENTS fron, D.C. 20231	NT OF COMMERCE
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST	UNITED STAT Patent and Tra Address: COMMIS Washing	ESL ARTMEN ademark Office SSIONER OF PATENTS Iton, D.C. 20231	AND TRADEMARKS
APPLICATION NO. 08/869, 305	FILING DATE	FIRST BIALICK	UNITED STAT Patent and Tra Address: COMMIS Washing	ESL ARTMEN ademark Office SSIONER OF PATENTS gion, D.C. 20231	NT OF COMMERCE S AND TRADEMARKS TORNEY DOCKET NO. SPY-004 (AMINER
APPLICATION NO. 08/869, 305	FILING DATE 5 0670479	FIRST BIALICK	UNITED STAT Patent and Tra Address: COMMIS Washing T NAMED INVENTOR	ESL ARTMEN ademark Office SSIONER OF PATENTS Jon, D.C. 20231 AT W EX HLIA, L	NT OF COMMERCE S AND TRADEMARKS TORNEY DOCKET NO. SPY-004 CAMINER
APPLICATION NO. 08/869,305 DAVID R GF 1337 CHEWF MIL DITAG	FILING DATE	FIRST BIALICK	UNITED STAT Patent and Tra Address: COMMIS Washing T NAMED INVENTOR	ESL ARTMEN ademark Office SSIONER OF PATENTS STON, D.C. 20231 AT W EX HLIA, L ART UNIT	NT OF COMMERCE S AND TRADEMARKS TORNEY DOCKET NO. SPY-004 CAMINER

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

		`	`,
08/869,305	A COLUMN TOP COLUMN	UNITED ST S DEPART Patent and Mademark Off Address: COMMISSIONER OF PAT Washington, D.C. 20231	MENT OF COMMERCE
APPLICATION NO. FILING DATE	FIRST		ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
APPLICATION NO. FILING DATE 08/869,305 06/04/97 DAVID R GRAHAM 1337 CHEWPON AVENUE	FIRST		ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
APPLICATION NO. FILING DATE 08/869,305 06/04/97 DAVID R GRAHAM 1337 CHEWPON AVENUE MILPITAS CA 95035	FIRST		ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. EXAMINER PAPER NUMBER 2/16/99

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

**Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks** 

1. File Conv

The Examiner hereby informs the Applicant(s) that the Information Disclosure Statement Under 37 C.F.R. 1.97(c) (1) filed on <u>September 13, 1999</u>, has been received, (i) matched up with its associated Application No. <u>08/869,305</u> after the Notice of Allowance (mailed on <u>June 7, 1999</u>, and (ii) entered. The references have been considered by the Examiner as indicated in the copy of initialed Form PTO-1449 attached herewith.

Attachement: Form PTO-1449

Ly V. Hua Patent Examiner Art Unit 2785

L. Hua December 14, 1999

14 Z

## File History Content Report

The following content is missing from the original file history record obtained from the United States Patent and Trademark Office. No additional information is available.

Document Date - 1999-12-16

Document Title - List of References cited by applicant and considered by examiner

.

This page is not part of the official USPTO record. It has been determined that content identified on this document is missing from the original file history record.

## File History Content Report

The following content is missing from the original file history record obtained from the United States Patent and Trademark Office. No additional information is available.

Document Date - 2000-07-11 Document Title - USPTO Grant

This page is not part of the official USPTO record. It has been determined that content identified on this document is missing from the original file history record.

······							
•	EFS ID:	21563316					
	Application Number:	08869305					
Inte	rnational Application Number:						
	Confirmation Number:	5587	<u>,</u>				
	Title of Invention:						
					r		
First N	lamed Inventor/Applicant Name:	WILLIAM P. BIALICK					
	Customer Number:	23676			-		
	Filer:	Robert Rose		<u> </u>			
·······	Filer Authorized By:			•			
······	Attorney Docket Number:	18835	<del>*</del>				
	Receipt Date:	21-FEB-2015					
	Filing Date:	04-JUN-1997					
	Time Stamp:	15:22:00	15:22:00				
	Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 11	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)				
Payment	information:			u			
Submitted wit	th Payment	no	~~	<u> </u>			
File Listing	g:						
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl		
1	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73.	373-6088802.pdf	1224058 43#925d4552ebef618113b2d070fd0a1226 7fd59	no	1		
Warnings:	الم <u>روب م</u> روم من						

2	Power of Attorney	SPEX-SB80 pdf	902057		1,
2	Fower of Attorney	SFEA-SBOU.put	bafb837024dda0592e2767f220b33bdc		
Warnings:	······				<u>.</u>
Information:				·····	
		Total Files Size (in b	ytes):	2126115	
characterized Post Card, as If a new appli 1.53(b)-(d) an Acknowledge National Stag If a timely sub U.S.C. 371 an national stag	I by the applicant, and including described in MPEP 503. i <u>cons Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> ication is being filed and the app od MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (3 ement Receipt will establish the <u>re of an International Applicatic</u> omission to enter the national s d other applicable requirement e submission under 35 U.S.C. 37	g page counts, where applica plication includes the necess 7 CFR 1.54) will be issued in filing date of the application on under 35 U.S.C. 371 tage of an international app s a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 inc 71 will be issued in addition t	able. It serves as evidend ary components for a fi due course and the date n. lication is compliant wit licating acceptance of th to the Filing Receipt, in e	te of receipt : ling date (see e shown on ti th the conditi ne applicatio due course.	similar to a a 37 CFR . his ions of 35 n as a
New Internat If a new intern an internation and of the Int national secu the application	ional Application Filed with the national application is being fil nal filing date (see PCT Article 1 ternational Filing Date (Form PC rrity, and the date shown on this on.	USPTO as a Receiving Office ed and the international app 1 and MPEP 1810), a Notifica T/RO/105) will be issued in o s Acknowledgement Receipt	2 Ilication includes the ne ation of the Internationa due course, subject to pr will establish the interr	cessary comj al Application rescriptions c lational filing	ponents for n Number concerning g date of
		2			
			er P <sup>arter</sup> iner	`.	
			an L <sup>ande</sup> rann R	<u>`</u>	,
				~	,
					ų
					Υ.
, ,					

Under the Paperwork Reduc	t ion Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to	Approved for use through 07/31/2012. OMB 0651-0031 J.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number
	STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR	3.73(b)
Applicant/Patent Owner SPEX TE	CHNOLOGIES	
Application No /Patent No. 608880	2 Filed/lee	sue Date: 07/11/2000
	WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNC	
SPEX Techologies, Inc.		
Name of Assignee)	(Type of Assignee, e.,	g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.
states that it is:		
	right fitte and interact in:	
2. 📋 an assignee of less than t	he entire right, title, and interest in	
(The extent (by percentag	e) of its ownership interest is	%); or
3. 🔲 the assignee of an undivi	ted interest in the entirety of (a complete as	ssignment from one of the joint inventors was made)
he patent application/patent identifie	d above, by virtue of either:	
A. An assignment from the i	nventor(s) of the patent application/patent is	dentified above. The assignment was recorded in
the United States Patent	and Trademark Office at Reel	, Frame, or for which a
OR		
B. 🔀 A chain of title from the in	ventor(s), of the patent application/patent is	dentified above, to the current assignee as follows:
1. From: BIALICK, e	т. т	o; Spyrus, Inc.
The document	was recorded in the United States Patent a	nd Trademark Office at
Reel 008942	, Frame_0204	, or for which a copy thereof is attached.
2. From: Spyrus, Inc	T	o: SPEX Technologies, Inc.
The document	was recorded in the United States Patent a	nd Trademark Office at
Reel 034971	, Frame_0298	, or for which a copy thereof is attached.
3. From:	т. 	<b>o:</b>
The document	was recorded in the United States Patent a	and Trademark Office at
Reel	, Frame	, or for which a copy thereof is attached.
	the chain of title are listed on a supplemen	tal sheet(s)
As required by 37 CFR 3.736 or concurrently is being, subn	b)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the c hitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.	hain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, 11.
[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e. accordance with 37 CFR Part	, a true copy of the original assignment do 3, to record the assignment in the records	cument(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]
The undersigned (whose title is sup	Hied below) is authorized to act on behalf o	f the assignee.
Kolow Y	Jose .	02/19/2015
Signature		Date
Robert Rose	i	Attorney of record
Printed or Typed Name	CER 3.73(b) The information is required to obtain or of	Title
process) an application. Confidentially is gov gathering, preparing, and submitting the comp you require to complete this form and/or sugg Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA	med by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 111 and 1.14. Thi eted application form to the USPTO. Time will vary dep stions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the C xandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR C 22313-1450.	is collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including bending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time hief information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner

•

٦

POWE	R OF ATTORNEY TO PRO	DSECUTE APPLICA	TIONS BEFORE THE	USPTO
I hereby revok	e all previous powers of attorney	y given in the application	Identified in the attached s	tatement und
37 CFR 3.73(b	<u>).</u> 		1 	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
i netenà abbou	а,			
Practitionen	s associated with the Customer Number	r: 1036)	77	
OR			I	
Practitionen	(s) named below (if more than ten pater	nt practitioners are to be named	i, then a customer number must	be used):
	Name	Registration Number	Name	Registral
as attomey(s) or a	gent(s) to represent the undersigned be	afore the United States Patent	and Trademark Office (USPTO) i	n connection with
attached to this for	m in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(b).		C assignment records of assignment	ien documenta
Please change the	e correspondence address for the applic	cation identified in the attached	statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b)	to:
	3	[		
The add	ress associated with Customer Number	r 103677		
OR				·····
Firm or Individual I	Vame			
Address				
City		State	Zip	
Country		L	L	
Telephone		) Email		·····
L				
Assignee Name a	nd Address:			*****
SPEX Techno	logies, Inc.			
SAN JOSE CA	3 DRIVE			
9, 4, <b>000 a</b> 0,				
A copy of this	form, together with a statement L	inder 37 CFR 3.73(b) (For	m PTO/SB/96 or equivalent)	Is required to
the practitione	rs appointed in this form if the a	pointed practitioner is at	thorized to act on behalf of	the assignee
and must iden	ify the application in which this l	Power of Attorney is to be	e filed.	
	SIGN The individual whole signature and the	NATURE of Assigned of Reco	and inad to put on behalf of the oncio	
	The individual whose signature and it	Ne is supply prefor is aution	12cd to act off bench of the assig	
Signature		9142	Date 2	/19/2015
Name	Tom H	akel	Telephone (4	08) 392-9131
Title	amplian is continued by 37 CED 4 34 4 99 -	President	d to obtain as ratain a honofit bu the	while which is in f
INS CONDUCTION OF RE	occess) an application. Confidentiality is gove	and by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFF	R 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is es	limated to take 3 n
by the USPTO to pr	mount of time you require to complete this for	orm and/or suggestions for reducin	g this burden, should be sent to the	Chief Information
by the USPTO to pr to complete, includin comments on the an	adamark Office ISC Decederant of Course	GIVE, T.V. BUX 1430, MEAUNERIE,	exandria, VA 22313-1450.	
by the USPTO to pr to complete, includin comments on the a U.S. Patent and Tr FORMS TO THIS A	ademark Office, U.S. Department of Comm DDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner fo	or Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Al		
by the USPTO to pr to complete, includin comments on the a U.S. Palent and Tr FORMS TO THIS A	ademark Office, U.S. Department of Comm DDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner fi If you need assistance in com	or Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Al	O-9199 and select option 2.	
by the USPTO to pr to complete, includin comments on the a U.S. Patent and Tr FORMS TO THIS A	ademark Office, U.S. Department of Comm DDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner fu	or Patents, P.U. Box 1450, Al apleting the form, call 1-600-PT	O-9199 and select option 2.	

•

:

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Addres. COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS PO Baz 1450 Alcanatia, Virginia 22313-1450 www.tapio.gov APPLICATION NUMBER FILING OR 371(C) DATE FIRST NAMED APPLICANT ATTY. DOCKET NO./IITLE 08/869,305 06/04/1997 WILLIAM P. BIALICK **CONFIRMATION NO. 5587** 103677 POA ACCEPTANCE LETTER Law Office of Robert J. Rose PO Box 4341 Diamond Bar, CA 91765 Date Mailed: 03/02/2015 NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 02/21/2015. The Power of Attorney in this application is accepted. Correspondence in this application will be mailed to the above address as provided by 37 CFR 1.33.

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

/dtvernon/

page 1 of 1



#### NOTICE REGARDING CHANGE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 02/21/2015.

• The Power of Attorney to you in this application has been revoked by the assignee who has intervened as provided by 37 CFR 3.71. Future correspondence will be mailed to the new address of record(37 CFR 1.33).

#### /dtvernon/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

111.1

1

page 1 of 1

rO: Director of the U Alexa	Mail Stop 8 J.S. Patent and Trademark O P.O. Box 1450 Indria, VA 22313-1450	REPORT ON THE ffice FILING OR DETERMINATION OI ACTION REGARDING A PATENT TRADEMARK	F AN C OR
In Complian filed in the U.S. Dis Trademarks or [	ce with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 strict Court Patents. ( ) the patent actio	U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been Central District of California on the fol on involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):	lowing
DOCKET NO.	DATE FILED	U.S. DISTRICT COURT	·······
PLAINTIFF	9/2//2010	DEFENDANT	
SPEX Technologies, In	<b>c.</b>	Kingston Technology Corporation, et al.	
PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO.	DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	
1 6,088,802	7/11/2000	SPEX Technologies, Inc.	
2 6,003,135	12/14/1999	SPEX Technologies, Inc.	
3 .			
4			
5			
DATE INCLUDED	In the above—entitled case, the INCLUDED BY	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:	ding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO.	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included: idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plez HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	uding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included: ndment Answer Cross Bill Other Plez HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  Idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plea HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	ading
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  Idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plez HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  Idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plea HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plea HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abc	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  idment Answer Cross Bill Other Plea HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abc DECISION/JUDGEMENT	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  ndment Answer Cross Bill Other Plez HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK  ecision has been rendered or judgement issued:	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abo DECISION/JUDGEMENT	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  ndment Answer Cross Bill Other Plez HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	ading
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abo DECISION/JUDGEMENT	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:  ndment Answer Cross Bill Other Plea HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK  holder of patent or judgement issued:	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abo DECISION/JUDGEMENT CLERK	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:	ading
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abo DECISION/JUDGEMENT CLERK Conv 1—Upon initiation of	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK ove—entitled case, the following d (BY) action, mail this conv to Directo	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abc DECISION/JUDGEMENT CLERK Copy 1—Upon initiation of Copy 2—Upon filing docum	In the above—entitled case, the 1 INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK ove—entitled case, the following d (BY) action, mail this copy to Directonent adding patent(s), mail this c	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:	nding
DATE INCLUDED PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO. 1 2 3 4 5 In the abo DECISION/JUDGEMENT CLERK Copy 1—Upon initiation of Copy 2—Upon filing docum	In the above—entitled case, the I INCLUDED BY DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK OR TRADEMARK OR TRADEMARK (BY) (BY) action, mail this copy to Directo nent adding patent(s), mail this c	following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:	ading

ase 8:16-cv-01790 Document 4 Filed 09/27/16 Page 1 of 1 Page ID #:15

 $(1,1,\dots,1,n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ 

1

## **BEST COPY**

.

"7 sheep

Application or Docket Number PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Effective October 1, 1997										
	CLAIMS AS FILED - PART I SMALL ENTITY OTHER THA (Column 1) (Column 2) TYPE OR SMALL ENTI						R THAN ENTITY			
FOR		NUMBI	ER FILED	NUMBER	EXTRA	RATE	FEE	]	RATE	FEE
BASI	C FEE						395.00	OR		790.00
TOTA		2	C minus	20 = * 2		x\$11:	=	OR	x\$22=	264
INDE			P minu	153= * <i>U</i>	1	x41=		OR	x82=	738.
MULT	TIPLE DEPEND	DENT CLAIM PRE	SENT	a series and		+135	=	OR	+270=	
* If th	e difference in co	olumn 1 is less than	zero, enter "0" i	n column 2			-	OR	TOTAL	1707,A
		CLAIMS AS		- PART II		n × na attenti	<b></b>		OTHE	R THAN
	\$ 15 - X - X	(Column 1)	A Charles and A contract	(Column 2)	(Column 3)	SMA		OR	SMALL	ENTITY
ENT A		REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
MON	Total	• 39	Minus	<u>** 32</u>	= 7	x\$,4]=	= · /63	OR	x\$22=	
MEI	Independent	* 8	Minus	***	=	x41=		OR	x82=	
4	FIRST PRE	SENTATION OF	MULTIPLE	DEPENDENT CL	AIM	+135=	=	OR	+270=	
		(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)	TOT, ADDIT. FE	E 63	OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	·
ENT B		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT	RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
MON	Total	*39	Minus	**	=	x\$11=	=	OR	x\$22=	
ME	Independent	• 9	Minus	12	=	x41=		OR	x82=	
	FIRST PRE	SENTATION OF	MULTIPLE	DEPENDENT CL	AIM	+135	=	OR	+270=	
		(Column 1)		(Column 2)	(Column 3)	TOT ADDIT. FI	AL E	OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	
ENT C		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE	]	RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
MOI	Total	*	Minus	**	=	x\$11-	=	OR	x\$22=	
MEN	Independent	*	Minus	***	=	x41=		OR	x82=	
۲	FIRST PRE	SENTATION OF	MULTIPLE	DEPENDENT CL	AIM	+135	=	OR	+270=	
* lf1 ** lf1 ***'lf1 Th	the entry in colu the "Highest Nur the "Highest Nur he "Highest Nur	mn 1 is less than the mber Previously Part mber Previously Part ber Part ber Previously Part ber Part ber ber ber Part ber Part ber Part ber ber ber	ne entry in colu iid For" iN THI iid For" iN THI d For" (Total or	mn 2, write "0" in col S SPACE is less than S SPACE is less than Independent) is the	lumn 3. 1 20, enter "20." 1 3, enter "3." highest number fo	TOT. ADDIT. Fi	AL EE	OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

Jat

.

16 . 14 1 -

ana atat Tagi ayong · • ...

### Thomson Innovation Patent Export, 2016-10-03 04:50:04 -0500

#### **Table of Contents**

1. US6088802A Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

### Family 1/1 4 record(s) per family

**Record 1/4** WO1998055911A1 PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY | DISPOSITIF PERIPHERIQUE A FONCTIONS DE SECURITE INTEGREES

Publication Number: WO1998055911A1 19981210

**Title:** PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY | DISPOSITIF PERIPHERIQUE A FONCTIONS DE SECURITE INTEGREES

**Title - DWPI:** Peripheral device with integrated security functionality in which portable computing module communicates with host device, and includes security functionality which enables security operations to be performed on data stored in host computer **Priority Number:** US1997869305A

Priority Date: 1997-06-04

Application Number: WO1998US11052A

Application Date: 1998-06-01

Publication Date: 1998-12-10

**IPC Class Table:** 

IPC	Section	Class	Subclass	Class Group	Subgroup
G06F002100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0021	G06F002100

#### IPC Class Table - DWPI:

IPC - DWPI	Section - DWPI	Class - DWPI	Subclass - DWPI	Class Group - DWPI	Subgroup - DWPI
G06F000100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0001	G06F000100
G06K001467	G	G06	G06K	G06K0014	G06K001467

Assignee/Applicant: SPYRUS INC.,US JP F Terms: JP FI Codes: Assignee - Original: SPYRUS INC. Any CPC Table:

Туре	Invention	Additional	Version	Office
Current	G06F 21/34	-	20130101	EP

### ECLA: G06F002134 Abstract:

The invention enables a peripheral device to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to the peripheral device from another device). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral device. The defined interactions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification), as described further below. The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device.

L'invention permet de faire communiquer un dispositif périphérique avec un ordinateur hôte et permet au dispositif périphérique d'effectuer une ou plusieurs opérations de sécurité: sur des données stockées dans l'ordinateur hôte, sur des données fournies par l'ordinateur hôte au dispositif périphérique (données qui peuvent par exemple être stockées ou être transférées sur un autre dispositif) ou sur des données récupérées par l'ordinateur hôte dans le dispositif périphérique (données qui peuvent par exemple avoir été stockées dans le dispositif périphérique ou y avoir été transférées depuis un autre dispositif). Le dispositif périphérique peut en particulier être adapté pour permettre d'assurer dans un unique périphérique monobloc l'exécution d'une ou plusieurs opérations de sécurité sur des données et permettre une interaction définie avec un ordinateur hôte n'ayant pas été intégré antérieurement aux opérations de sécurité d'un unique périphérique monobloc. Les interactions définies peuvent porter sur différents types de fonctions (par exemple stockage de données, entrée et sortie de données, identification de l'utilisateur)

telles que présentées plus loin. Le dispositif périphérique peut également être réalisé pour que les opérations de sécurité s'effectuent en ligne c.-à-d. entre la communication de données à destination ou en provenance de l'ordinateur hôte et l'exécution de l'interaction définie. De plus, le dispositif périphérique peut être réalisé pour que ses fonctions de sécurité soient transparentes vis à vis de l'ordinateur hôte.

# Language of Publication: EN INPADOC Legal Status Table:

Gazette Date	Code	INPADOC Legal Status Impact		
2001-09-26	www	-		
Description: WIPO INFORMATION: WI	THDRAWN IN NATIONAL OFFICE EP 1	998926135		
2000-12-04	NENP	-		
Description: NON-ENTRY INTO THE N	ATIONAL PHASE IN: CA			
2000-04-06	REG	-		
<b>Description:</b> REFERENCE TO NATION	AL CODE DE 8642 IMPACT ABOLISHE	ED FOR DE - I.E. PCT APPL. NOT ENT.		
2000-03-22	WWP	+		
Description: WIPO INFORMATION: PU	BLISHED IN NATIONAL OFFICE EP 199	98926135		
2000-03-03	NENP	-		
Description: NON-ENTRY INTO THE N	ATIONAL PHASE IN: JP 1999502623			
1999-12-24	WWE	+		
Description: WIPO INFORMATION: EN	TRY INTO NATIONAL PHASE EP 19989	926135		
1999-04-21	121	-		
<b>Description:</b> EP: THE EPO HAS BEEN	INFORMED BY WIPO THAT EP WAS DES	IGNATED IN THIS APPLICATION		
	1	I		
1999-03-04	DFPE	-		
<b>Description:</b> REQUEST FOR PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION FILED PRIOR TO EXPIRATION OF 19TH MONTH FROM PRIORITY DATE (PCT APPLICATION FILED BEFORE 20040101)				
1998-12-10	AL	+		

**Description:** DESIGNATED COUNTRIES FOR REGIONAL PATENTS WO 9855911 A1 GH; GM; KE; LS; MW; SD; SZ; UG; ZW; AM; AZ; BY; KG; KZ; MD; RU; TJ; TM; AT; BE; CH; CY; DE; DK; ES; FI; FR; GB; GR; IE; IT; LU; MC; NL; PT; SE; BF; BJ; CF; CG; CI; CM; GA; GN; ML; MR; NE; SN; TD; TG

1998-12-10	AK	+

**Description:** DESIGNATED STATES WO 9855911 A1 AL; AM; AT; AU; AZ; BA; BB; BG; BR; BY; CA; CH; CN; CU; CZ; DE; DK; EE; ES; FI; GB; GE; GH; GM; GW; HU; ID; IL; IS; JP; KE; KG; KP; KR; KZ; LC; LK; LR; LS; LT; LU; LV; MD; MG; MK; MN; MW; MX; NO; NZ; PL; PT; RO; RU; SD; SE; SG; SI; SK; SL; TJ; TM; TR; TT; UA; UG; UZ; VN; YU; ZW

Post-Issuance (US): Reassignment (US) Table: Maintenance Status (US): Litigation (US): **Opposition (EP):** License (EP): **EPO Procedural Status:** Front Page Drawing: 300 Host Peripheral Computing Device Device Security 303 302 301 302a

Assignee - Current US:

Record 2/4 AU199878042A Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

Publication Number: AU199878042A 19981221

Title: Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

**Title - DWPI:** Peripheral device with integrated security functionality in which portable computing module communicates with host device, and includes security functionality which enables security operations to be performed on data stored in host computer

Priority Number: US1997869305A | WO1998US11052A

Priority Date: 1997-06-04 | 1998-06-01 Application Number: AU199878042D Application Date: 1998-06-01 Publication Date: 1998-12-21

#### IPC Class Table:

IPC	Section	Class	Subclass	Class Group	Subgroup
G06F002100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0021	G06F002100

#### IPC Class Table - DWPI:

IPC - DWPI	Section - DWPI	Class - DWPI	Subclass - DWPI	Class Group - DWPI	Subgroup - DWPI
G06F000100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0001	G06F000100
G06K001467	G	G06	G06K	G06K0014	G06K001467

Assignee/Applicant: SPYRUS INC JP F Terms: JP FI Codes: Assignee - Original: Any CPC Table:

Туре	Invention	Additional	Version	Office
Current	G06F 21/34	-	20130101	EP

ECLA: G06F002134 Abstract: Language of Publication: EN INPADOC Legal Status Table:

Gazette Date	Code	INPADOC Legal Status Impact		
2000-02-17	MK6	-		
Description: APPLICATION LAPSED SECTION 142(2)(F)/REG. 8.3(3) - PCT APPLIC. NOT ENTERING NATIONAL PHASE				

Post-Issuance (US): Reassignment (US) Table: Maintenance Status (US): Litigation (US): **Opposition (EP):** License (EP): **EPO Procedural Status:** Front Page Drawing: 300 1 Peripheral Device Host Computing Device Security 303 <u>301</u> <u>302</u> 302a

Assignee - Current US:

**Record 3/4** EP986780A1 PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY | PERIPHERIEGERÄT MIT INTEGRIERTER SICHERHEITSFUNKTIONSFÄHIGKEIT | DISPOSITIF PERIPHERIQUE A FONCTIONS DE SECURITE INTEGREES

#### Publication Number: EP986780A1 20000322

Title: PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY | PERIPHERIEGERÄT MIT INTEGRIERTER SICHERHEITSFUNKTIONSFÄHIGKEIT | DISPOSITIF PERIPHERIQUE A FONCTIONS DE SECURITE INTEGREES Title - DWPI: Peripheral device with integrated security functionality in which portable computing module communicates with host device, and includes security functionality which enables security operations to be performed on data stored in host computer Priority Number: US1997869305A | WO1998US11052A Priority Date: 1997-06-04 | 1998-06-01 Application Number: EP1998926135A Application Date: 1998-06-01 Publication Date: 2000-03-22 IPC Class Table:

IPC	Section	Class	Subclass	Class Group	Subgroup
G06F002100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0021	G06F002100

#### **IPC Class Table - DWPI:**

IPC - DWPI	Section - DWPI	Class - DWPI	Subclass - DWPI	Class Group - DWPI	Subgroup - DWPI
G06F000100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0001	G06F000100
G06K001467	G	G06	G06K	G06K0014	G06K001467

Assignee/Applicant: Spyrus Inc.,San Jose, CA 95131,US,01935471 JP F Terms: JP FI Codes: Assignee - Original: Spyrus Inc. Any CPC Table:

Туре	Invention	Additional	Version	Office
Current	G06F 21/34	-	20130101	EP

#### ECLA: G06F002134 Abstract:

The invention enables a peripheral device to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to the peripheral device from another device). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral device. The defined interactions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification), as described further below. The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device.

L'invention permet de faire communiquer un dispositif périphérique avec un ordinateur hôte et permet au dispositif périphérique d'effectuer une ou plusieurs opérations de sécurité: sur des données stockées dans l'ordinateur hôte, sur des données fournies par l'ordinateur hôte au dispositif périphérique (données qui peuvent par exemple être stockées ou être transférées sur un autre dispositif) ou sur des données récupérées par l'ordinateur hôte dans le dispositif périphérique (données qui peuvent par exemple avoir été stockées dans le dispositif périphérique ou y avoir été transférées depuis un autre dispositif). Le dispositif périphérique peut en particulier être adapté pour permettre d'assurer dans un unique périphérique monobloc l'exécution d'une ou plusieurs opérations de sécurité sur des données et permettre une interaction définie avec un ordinateur hôte n'ayant pas été intégré antérieurement aux opérations de sécurité d'un unique périphérique monobloc. Les interactions définies peuvent porter sur différents types de fonctions (par exemple stockage de données, entrée et sortie de données, identification de l'utilisateur) telles que présentées plus loin. Le dispositif périphérique peut également être réalisé pour que les opérations de sécurité s'effectuent en ligne c.-à-d. entre la communication de données à destination ou en provenance de l'ordinateur hôte et l'exécution de l'interaction définie. De plus, le dispositif périphérique peut être réalisé pour que ses fonctions de sécurité soient transparentes vis à vis de l'ordinateur hôte.

## Language of Publication: EN INPADOC Legal Status Table:

Gazette Date	Code	INPADOC Legal Status Impact				
2002-06-05	18D	-				
Description: DEEMED TO BE WITHDR/	Description: DEEMED TO BE WITHDRAWN 2001-09-26					
2001-06-27	17Q	+				
Description: FIRST EXAMINATION REF	PORT 2001-05-15					
2000-03-22	АК	+				
Description: DESIGNATED CONTRACTING STATES: EP 0986780 A1 AT; BE; CH; CY; DE; DK; ES; FI; FR; GB; GR;						

IE; IT; LI; LU; MC; NL; PT; SE				
2000-03-22	17P	+		
Description: REQUEST FOR EXAMINATION FILED 1999-12-24				

#### Post-Issuance (US): Reassignment (US) Table: Maintenance Status (US): Litigation (US): Opposition (EP): License (EP):

**EPO Procedural Status:** EX-REPORT 2001-05-15 2001 Dispatch of 1st examination report | RJ-DWDRAW 2001-09-26 2001 Deemed to be withdrawn | EX-RQ 1999-12-24 1999 Request for examination

#### Front Page Drawing:



Assignee - Current US:

#### Record 4/4 US6088802A Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

#### Publication Number: US6088802A 20000711

Title: Peripheral device with integrated security functionality

**Title - DWPI:** Peripheral device with integrated security functionality in which portable computing module communicates with host device, and includes security functionality which enables security operations to be performed on data stored in host computer **Priority Number:** US1997869305A

Priority Date: 1997-06-04

Application Number: US1997869305A

Application Date: 1997-06-04

Publication Date: 2000-07-11

**IPC Class Table:** 

IPC	Section	Class	Subclass	Class Group	Subgroup
G06F002100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0021	G06F002100

#### IPC Class Table - DWPI:

IPC - DWPI	Section - DWPI	Class - DWPI	Subclass - DWPI	Class Group - DWPI	Subgroup - DWPI
G06F000100	G	G06	G06F	G06F0001	G06F000100
G06K001467	G	G06	G06K	G06K0014	G06K001467

Assignee/Applicant: Spyrus Inc.,Santa Clara,CA,US JP F Terms: JP FI Codes: Assignee - Original: Spyrus Inc. Any CPC Table:

Туре	Invention	Additional	Version	Office
Current	G06F 21/34	-	20130101	EP

#### ECLA: G06F002134 Abstract:

The invention enables a peripheral device to communicate with a host computing device to enable one or more security operations to be performed by the peripheral device on data stored within the host computing device, data provided from the host computing device to the peripheral device (which can then be, for example, stored in the peripheral device or transmitted to yet another device), or data retrieved by the host computing device from the peripheral device (e.g., data that has been stored in the peripheral device, transmitted to the peripheral device from another device or input to the peripheral device by a person). In particular, the peripheral device can be adapted

to enable, in a single integral peripheral device, performance of one or more security operations on data, and a defined interaction with a host computing device that has not previously been integrated with security operations in a single integral device. The defined interactions can provide a variety of types of functionality (e.g., data storage, data communication, data input and output, user identification). The peripheral device can also be implemented so that the security operations are performed in-line, i.e., the security operations are performed between the communication of data to or from the host computing device and the performance of the defined interaction. Moreover, the peripheral device can be implemented so that the security functionality of the peripheral device is transparent to the host computing device.

## Language of Publication: EN INPADOC Legal Status Table:

Gazette Date	Code	INPADOC Legal Status Impact			
2015-02-17	AS	-			
Description: ASSIGNMENT SPEX TECHNOLOGIES, INC., CALIFORNIA ASSIGNMENT OF ASSIGNORS INTEREST; ASSIGNOR:SPYRUS, INC.; REEL/FRAME:034971/0298 2015-02-12					
2012-01-10	FPAY	+			
Description: FEE PAYMENT					
2008-06-06	SULP	+			
Description: SURCHARGE FOR LATE	PAYMENT				
2008-06-06	FPAY	+			
Description: FEE PAYMENT	Description: FEE PAYMENT				
2008-01-21	REMI	-			
Description: MAINTENANCE FEE REM	Description: MAINTENANCE FEE REMINDER MAILED				
2004-07-07	SULP	+			
Description: SURCHARGE FOR LATE PAYMENT					
2004-07-07	FPAY	+			
Description: FEE PAYMENT					
2004-01-28	REMI	-			
Description: MAINTENANCE FEE REMINDER MAILED					
1998-01-20	AS	-			

**Description:** ASSIGNMENT SPYRUS, INC., CALIFORNIA ASSIGNMENT OF ASSIGNORS INTEREST; ASSIGNORS:BIALICK, WILLIAM P.; SUTHERLAND, MARK J.; DOLPHIN-PETERSON, JANET L.; AND OTHERS; REEL/FRAME:008942/0204; SIGNING DATES FROM 19971218 TO 19971223

#### Post-Issuance (US): Reassignment (US) Table:

Assignee	Assignor	Date Signed	Reel/Frame	Date		
SPEX TECHNOLOGIES INC.,SAN JOSE,CA,US	SPYRUS, INC.	2015-02-12	034971/0298	2015-02-17		
Conveyance: ASSIGNMENT	Conveyance: ASSIGNMENT OF ASSIGNORS INTEREST (SEE DOCUMENT FOR DETAILS).					
Corresponent: ROBERT J. R	OSE PO BOX 4341 DIAMOND	BAR, CA 91765				
SPYRUS INC.,SAN	BIALICK, WILLIAM P.	1997-12-19	008942/0204	1998-01-20		
JOSE,CA,US	SUTHERLAND, MARK J.	1997-12-18				
	DOLPHIN-PETERSON, JANET L.	1997-12-20				
	ROWLAND, THOMAS K.	1997-12-18				
	SKEBA, KIRK W.	1997-12-23				
	HOUSLEY, RUSSELL D.	1997-12-19				
Conveyance: ASSIGNMENT OF ASSIGNORS INTEREST (SEE DOCUMENT FOR DETAILS).						
Corresponent: DAVID R. GRAHAM 1337 CHEWPON AVE. MILPITAS, CALIFORNIA 95035						

#### Maintenance Status (US): Litigation (US): Opposition (EP): License (EP): EPO Procedural Status:

Front Page Drawing:



Assignee - Current US: SPEX TECHNOLOGIES INC.



THOMSON REUTERS

Copyright 2007-2016 THOMSON REUTERS



## **United States Patent and Trademark Office**

Office of the Commissioner for Patents

### PERIPHERAL DEVICE WITH INTEGRATED SECURITY FUNCTIONALITY

<b>PATENT #</b> 6088802	<b>APPLICATION #</b> 08869305	FILING DATE 06/04/1997	ISSUE DATE 07/11/2000	
Payment Wi	ndow Status			No maintenance

WINDOW 11.5 Year		STATUS Closed		FEES Paid		
Window	First Day to Pay	Surcharge Starts	Last Day to Pay	Status	Fees	_
3.5 Year	07/11/2003	01/13/2004	07/12/2004	Closed	Paid	
7.5 Year	07/11/2007	01/12/2008	07/11/2008	Closed	Paid	1
11.5 Year	07/11/2011	01/12/2012	07/11/2012	Closed	Paid	

#### Patent Holder Information

Customer #	23676
Entity Status	UNDISCOUNTED
Phone Number	6267964000
Address	Leech Tishman Fuscaldo & Lampl Jeffrey G. Sheldon 100 Corson Street Third Floor PASADENA, CA 91103-3842 UNITED STATES

P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 • www.uspto.gov

fees are due.